

1

ENGLISH GRAMMAR BOOK



Grammarway

Jenny Dooley - Virginia Evans

with answers



Express Publishing

Grammarway 1

with answers

Jenny Dooley-Virginia Evans



Express Publishing

Published by Express Publishing

Liberty House, Greenham Business Park, Newbury, Berkshire RG19 6HW

Tel.: (0044) 1635 817 363 Fax: (0044) 1635 817 463

e-mail: inquiries@expresspublishing.co.uk

<http://www.expresspublishing.co.uk>

© Jenny Dooley - Virginia Evans, 1999

Design & Illustration © Express Publishing, 1999

Colour Illustrations: Terry Wilson © Express Publishing, 1999

First published 1999

Seventh impression 2011

Made in EU

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form, or by any means, electronic, photocopying or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the Publishers.

This book is not meant to be changed in any way.

ISBN 978-1-84216-365-8

Note: To download the Picture Flashcards visit:
<http://www.teachers-corner.co.uk/free-resources>

Contents

Introduction	5
Unit 1 Plurals / Countable Nouns - Uncountable Nouns	6
Unit 2 Subject Personal Pronouns / The Verb "To be"	11
Unit 3 Articles (A/An - The) / This - That - These - Those	16
Unit 4 The Verbs "Have Got" - "Can"	21
Unit 5 Possessives (Possessive case/Possessive adjectives - pronouns)	26
Revision 1 (Units 1 - 5)	32
Unit 6 Present Continuous	34
Unit 7 Object Pronouns / The Imperative	39
Unit 8 There Is - Are / Some - Any - No	42
Unit 9 Present Simple (Present Simple vs Present Continuous)	47
Unit 10 A lot of - Much - Many/(A) little - (A) few	54
Revision 2 (Units 1 - 10)	58
Unit 11 Past Simple (Was/Were - Had)	60
Unit 12 Past Simple (Regular/Irregular Verbs)	66
Unit 13 Present Perfect (Past Simple vs Present Perfect)	72
Unit 14 Prepositions (Time - Place - Movement)	78
Unit 15 The Future (Will - Be Going to - Present Continuous)	84
Revision 3 (Units 1 - 15)	90
Unit 16 Adjectives / Adverbs / Comparisons	92
Unit 17 Questions (Subject/Object Questions - Question Tags)	98
Unit 18 Modal Verbs (Can - Could - May - Must - Needn't - Shall - Will)	106
Unit 19 Infinitive / The "-ing form" / Too - Enough	114
Unit 20 Both / Neither - All / None	120
Revision 4 (Units 1 - 20)	123
Irregular Verbs	126
Key to the Exercises	127

Introduction

Grammarway 1 is the first book in a four-level grammar series presented in full colour for learners of the English language at Beginner level. The book is available in two editions - with or without answers - and is suitable for self-study or classroom use as a supplement to any course at this level.

The aim of the book is to help learners understand basic English grammar structures through comprehensive theory tables and functional examples, accompanied by a wealth of attractive photographs and illustrations.

The book adheres to the principle that every structure should first be heard, then practised in oral and, finally, in written form. Based on the use of full-colour visual stimuli, the book encourages learners to speak before writing, and allows them to practise English structures through a variety of enjoyable and useful activities.

The book consists of **20 units**, each focusing on a particular grammar topic.

A typical unit contains:

- presentation of grammar structures by means of visual prompts
- simple, concise explanations of the grammar structures
- examples in everyday conversational English, together with a few expressions showing slightly more formal use
- exercises practising the new structures, to help learners use correct, appropriate patterns in everyday situations
- speaking and writing activities to practise the new structures in oral and written form

A **revision unit** follows every five units to consolidate material presented in previous units.

The Student's Book is accompanied by a **Teacher's Book** containing:

- guidance on presenting the theory of each unit, with or without Picture Flashcards
- a full key to the exercises in the Student's Book
- four tests in two separate versions each

The **Picture Flashcards** which accompany this book can be used for lively, motivating presentation of the target grammar structures.

Thanks

The authors would like to thank Rania Dunn, Anna Miller, Laura Houston, Jonathan Harrison and Steven Davies for their help in producing this book. Many thanks to the Express Publishing design team. We would also like to thank those institutions and teachers who piloted the manuscript, and whose comments and feedback were invaluable in the production of the book.

UNIT 1

Plurals/Countable Nouns-Uncountable Nouns

Plural Number

◆ Most nouns form their plural by adding **-s**.



a car

two cars

◆ Nouns ending in **-s**, **-ss**, **-sh**, **-ch**, **-x**, **-o**, take **-es** in the plural:

bus - buses, dress - dresses, brush - brushes, torch - torches, box - boxes, etc.



a tomato

two tomatoes

But some nouns ending in **-o** take only **-s**.

radio - radios, piano - pianos, photo - photos, rhino - rhinos, hippo - hippos, video - videos, etc.

◆ Nouns ending in a **vowel + y** take **-s** in the plural.



a boy

two boys

◆ Nouns ending in a **consonant + y**, drop the **-y** and take **-ies** in the plural.



a strawberry



three strawberries

◆ Nouns ending in **-f** or **-fe**, drop the **f** or **-fe** and take **-ves** in the plural.



a leaf

four leaves



a wolf

two wolves

But some nouns ending in **-f** or **-fe** take only **-s**.

roof - roofs, giraffe - giraffes, cliff-cliffs, etc.

◆ Adjectives do not take **-s** in the plural.



a happy girl



two happy girls



1 Write the plural.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 lemon ... <i>lemons</i> ... | 7 glass |
| 2 bus | 8 key |
| 3 peach | 9 piano |
| 4 cherry | 10 potato |
| 5 roof | 11 ball |
| 6 fox | 12 book |

Irregular Plurals

Some nouns are irregular. For example:



child



children



man



men



woman



women



goose



geese



tooth



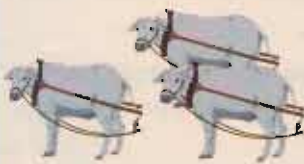
teeth



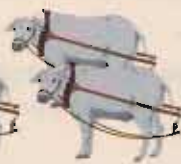
foot



feet



ox



oxen



mouse



mice



sheep



sheep



deer



deer

2 Write the plural.

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1 sheep ... <i>sheep</i> ... | 11 policeman |
| 2 baby | 12 raspberry |
| 3 child | 13 sandwich |
| 4 green leaf | 14 mouse |
| 5 old lady | 15 photo |
| 6 radio | 16 cliff |
| 7 ox | 17 pen |
| 8 tall woman | 18 watch |
| 9 knife | 19 big foot |
| 10 toy | 20 nice book |

3 Write the plural.



- | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 duck ... <i>ducks</i> ... | 7 giraffe |
| 2 ostrich | 8 deer |
| 3 parrot | 9 calf |
| 4 swan | 10 fox |
| 5 turkey | 11 mouse |
| 6 dolphin | 12 hippo |

4 Write the words in plural in the correct box.

bicycle, bus, cherry, knife, man, glass, child, house, apple, box, baby, ball, tomato, ferry, leaf, tooth, goose, radio, cliff, dress, torch, city, wife, ox, deer, calf, fox, giraffe, watch, parrot, lady, wolf, dish, boy, woman, melon, sheep, armchair

-s	<i>bicycles,</i>
-es	<i>buses,</i>
-ies	<i>cherries,</i>
-ves	<i>knives,</i>
irregular	<i>men,</i>



UNIT 1

Plurals/Countable Nouns-Uncountable Nouns

Pronunciation

The suffix of the plural form is pronounced:

- ◆ **/s/** when the noun ends in a(n) /f/, /k/, /p/, /t/ or /θ/ sound.
cliffs, books, shops, cats, myths, etc.
- ◆ **/vz/** when the noun ends in a(n) /s/, /ks/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/, /z/ or /ʒ/ sound.
buses, foxes, brushes, torches, bridges, roses, mirages, etc.
- ◆ **/z/** when the noun ends in any other sound.
rooms, boys, pears, leaves, lemons, pianos, etc.

5

First say the words in the plural, then write them in the correct box.

desk, church, apple, dolphin, chair, hat, baby, dress, bird, ball, cliff, box, radio, shirt, rose, dish, roof, song, skirt, cherry, fox, bag, clock, glass, piano, onion, basket, bush, ferry, cage, key, myth, bus, flower, door, orange

/s/	<i>desks,</i>
/vz/	<i>churches,</i>
/z/	<i>apples,</i>



Countable-Uncountable Nouns

- ◆ **Countable nouns** are nouns which can be counted (e.g. *one apple, two apples, etc.*) and can be in the singular or the plural. We put **a** before the noun in the singular when it begins with a consonant sound (b, d, p, etc.) and **an** when it begins with a vowel sound (a, e, i, o, u).



a flower



three flowers



an apple



two apples

- ◆ **Uncountable nouns** are nouns which cannot be counted and they usually have no plural. These nouns include:

food: *cheese, butter, meat, salt, pepper, bacon, bread, chocolate, honey, jam, etc.*

liquids: *coffee, milk, water, tea, wine, lemonade, petrol, oil, etc.*

materials: *gold, iron, silver, wood, paper, etc.*

abstract nouns: *beauty, love, happiness, etc.*

others: *hair, money, news, snow, furniture, weather, advice, etc.*

- ◆ We use **some** with uncountable nouns and not **a/an**.

We also use **some** with countable nouns but only in the plural.



some cheese
~~not: a cheese~~



some bananas

Plurals/Countable Nouns - Uncountable Nouns

6 Write a, an or some.



1 *some* meat



2 orange



3 ... chocolate



4 jam



5 butter



6 leaves



7 soup



8 egg



9 coffee



10 .. elephant



11 milk



12 cups



13 lemons



14 bread



15 doll

7 Write a, an or some. Which nouns are countable/uncountable?

- | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1 ..a.. biscuit | 7 armchair | 13 money |
| 2 tea | 8 plate | 14 watches |
| 3 carrot | 9 chair | 15 salt |
| 4 ring | 10 pepper | 16 honey |
| 5 bread | 11 cat | 17 water |
| 6 boxes | 12 dress | 18 advice |

We can use countable and uncountable nouns after phrases of quantity such as: a jar/bottle/piece/loaf/cup/bar/glass/kilo/carton/bowl/can/jug/slice/tin/packet + of, etc.



a jar of marmalade



a bottle of beer



a piece of pie



a loaf of bread



a cup of coffee



a bar of chocolate



a glass of milk



a kilo of meat



a carton of milk



a bowl of soup



a can of fruit juice



a jug of orange juice



a slice of bread



a tin of fish



a packet of spaghetti

8 Match the words as in the example:

- a glass of
- a slice of
- a bar of
- a tin of
- a carton of
- a piece of
- a bottle of
- a cup of



- chocolate
- Coke
- bread
- lemonade
- beans
- tea
- orange juice
- cake
- coffee
- wine
- soap

UNIT 1

Plurals/Countable Nouns-Uncountable Nouns

9 Write how many you can see in the pictures.



1 .. *two cups of coffee* .. 2



3



5

10 Make the following nouns countable.

- 1 some Coke - two *glasses/bottles/cans of Coke*
- 2 some bread - three
- 3 some chocolate - four
- 4 some water - five
- 5 some cheese - two
- 6 some meat - three
- 7 some wine - eight
- 8 some salmon - four
- 9 some milk - ten
- 10 some soap - four

11 Circle the uncountable noun in each group.

- 1 furniture, chair, table, desk
- 2 potato, carrot, tomato, soup
- 3 coffee, cup, glass, jug
- 4 sheep, meat, ox, calf
- 5 apple, strawberry, chocolate, cherry
- 6 glass, bottle, can, soda
- 7 loaf, slice, bread, piece
- 8 wood, tree, leaf, flower

ORAL Activity

Do this activity in pairs. One of you is the grocer and the other is the customer. Look at the pictures and act out similar dialogues.

- e.g. SA: *Hello! Can I help you?*
 SB: *Yes please. I need a kilo of strawberries and two kilos of carrots.*
 SA: *Anything else?*
 SB: *Yes. A carton of orange juice and two tins of beans.*
 SA: *Here you are.*
 SB: *Thank you.*



WRITING Activity

You are having a party. Ten friends are coming. Look at the pictures in the oral activity, add your own ideas and complete the shopping list for your party.

Shopping List

a kilo of strawberries

.....

.....

.....

.....

Subject Pronouns/The Verb "To Be"

Subject Personal Pronouns

We can use subject personal pronouns before a verb instead of the noun or the name of a person. These are:

Singular	Plural
I	we
you	you
he, she, it	they

◆ We use **he** for a man or a boy.



man ⇒ **he**



boy ⇒ **he**

◆ We use **she** for a woman or a girl.



woman ⇒ **she**



girl ⇒ **she**

◆ We use **it** for a thing or an animal when we do not know its sex. When we talk about our pets or animals whose sex we know we can use **he** or **she**.



car ⇒ **it**



bear ⇒ **it**

◆ In the plural we use **they** for people, animals, plants and things.



man and woman ⇒ **they**



roses ⇒ **they**

1 Write **he, she, it or they.**



1 ...**they**...



2



3



4



5



6



7



8



9

2 Write **he, she, it, we, you or they.**

- | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 Tony he | 9 Mary and you |
| 2 mice | 10 woman |
| 3 ring | 11 Mr and Mrs Smith |
| 4 Anna | 12 dishes |
| 5 Sam and I | 13 Jenny |
| 6 cats | 14 boys |
| 7 man | 15 elephant |
| 8 balls | 16 brush |

UNIT 2

Subject Pronouns/The Verb "To Be"

The verb "to be"



A: **Are you** from England?
 B: No, **we aren't**. **We're** from China.



He's Tom and **she's** Helen.
They are friends.

Affirmative		Negative		Interrogative
Long form	Short form	Long form	Short form	
I am	I'm	I am not	I'm not	Am I?
You are	You're	You are not	You aren't	Are you?
He is	He's	He is not	He isn't	Is he?
She is	She's	She is not	She isn't	Is she?
It is	It's	It is not	It isn't	Is it?
We are	We're	We are not	We aren't	Are we?
You are	You're	You are not	You aren't	Are you?
They are	They're	They are not	They aren't	Are they?



- 3** Look at the pictures and fill in he/she/it is or they are.
- 1 ...*He is*... a postman.
 - 2 doctors.
 - 3 a cat.
 - 4 a hairdresser.
 - 5 brushes.
 - 6 a baker.
 - 7 a tennis ball.
 - 8 a singer.

- 4** First answer the following questions about yourself. Then, in pairs, act out the dialogue with the books closed.
- A: Who are you? B:
 - A: Where are you from? B:
from
 - A: How old are you? B:

5 Fill in the gaps as in the example.

Long form	Short form
1 I ... <i>am</i> ... a student.	I ... <i>'m</i> ... a student.
2 We from Spain.	We from Spain.
3 He not a doctor.	He a doctor.
4 You a singer.	You a singer.
5 She an actress.	She an actress.
6 It a watch.	It a watch.
7 They not painters.	They painters.
8 I not tall.	I tall.

Singular	Plural
I am	→ We are
You are	→ You are
He/She/It is	→ They are

6 Write the plural.

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 She is a girl. | ... <i>They are girls</i> ... |
| 2 He is a teacher. | ..... |
| 3 It is a deer. | ..... |
| 4 I am a boy. | ..... |
| 5 She is a policewoman. | ..... |
| 6 It is a giraffe. | ..... |
| 7 I am a baker. | ..... |
| 8 He is a man. | ..... |
| 9 You are a child. | ..... |
| 10 It is a box. | ..... |

Short Answers

Short answers are answers to questions which begin with the verb form *is/are*. In short answers we do not repeat the whole question. We only use **Yes** or **No**, the subject pronoun and the verb form *is (isn't) / are (aren't)*.

e.g. *Are you British? No, I'm not.*

Are you ...?	Yes, I am / we are.
	No, I'm not / we aren't.
Is he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it is.
	No, he/she/it isn't.
Are they ...?	Yes, they are.
	No, they aren't.

7 Write questions and answers as in the example.



1 ...*Are they* singers?
 ...*No, they aren't*....
 ...*They're* dancers.



2 a waiter?



3 apples?

 tomatoes.



4 a bear?

 a bird.



5 a teacher?

 a photographer.



6 flowers?

UNIT 2

Subject Pronouns/The Verb "To Be"

8 (i) Look at the table and answer the questions.

Paul	England	34	writer
Rosa	Italy	30	actress
Chin	China	25	teacher
Mei	China	25	teacher

Where **is** Paul/Rosa from?
How old **is** he/she?
What **is** his/her job?

Where **are** Chin and Mei from?
How old **are** they?
What **are** their jobs?

(ii) Now, fill in *is/isn't, are/aren't*.

- Paul *is* from England. He from China. He 34 years old. He a writer.
- Rosa from Italy. She 15 years old. She 30 years old. She an actress. She a writer.
- Chin and Mei from China. They from Italy. They 25 years old. They teachers. Now, write about yourself: I



9 Correct the mistakes.

- Sarah and I am sisters.
- Ben and Tim is at school.
- Horses and cows is animals.
- England are a country.
- Tim are from America.

10 Look at the pictures and fill in *is/isn't, are/aren't* and the correct personal pronoun *he, she, it* or *they*.



- Alice **is** a teacher. **Is she** old?
No, **she isn't**. **She is** young.



- Greg and Bob naval officers. at home now?
No, at work.

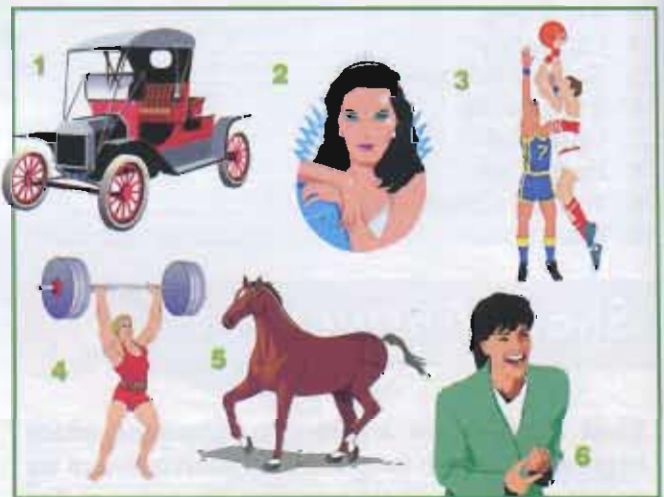


- George a businessman. poor?
No, rich.



- This a musical instrument. a trumpet?
No, a saxophone.

11 Look at the pictures and write questions and answers as in the examples.



- (new/old)
Is it new?
No, it isn't new.
It is old.
- (ugly/beautiful)
- (short/tall)
- (weak/strong)
- (slow/fast)
- (sad/happy)

ORAL
Activity

The teacher chooses a leader. The leader chooses a job from the pictures and writes it on a piece of paper. The other students ask questions to find out what he/she is. The student who guesses correctly becomes the leader.

e.g. (The leader chooses "porter")

S1: *Are you a doctor?* Leader: *No, I'm not.*
 S2: *Are you a teacher?* Leader: *No, I'm not.*
 S3: *Are you a porter?* Leader: *Yes, I am.*



policeman doctor nurse teacher



porter waitress painter



postman singer cook



athlete dancer

WRITING
Activity

Read the information about the two people below. Then, fill in the missing words in the short texts.



Name: Pierre
Surname: Delon
Age: 17
Job: Student, St Martin's College
Nationality: French



Name: Nora
Surname: Milton
Age: 49
Job: Secretary, Star TV Channel
Nationality: Canadian

..... Pierre Delon. He is 17. He is a at St Martin's College. He is

..... Nora Milton. She is She is a secretary at Star TV She Canadian.

Now complete the information about yourself.



Name:
Surname:
Age:
Job:
Nationality:

Now write about yourself:

I am

UNIT 3

Articles/This-That-These-Those

The Indefinite Article "A/An"

The indefinite article **a/an** is used before singular countable nouns. We use **a** before nouns which begin with a consonant sound and **an** before nouns which begin with a vowel sound.



a dolphin

a university (consonant sound)

a house (consonant sound)



an elephant

an umbrella (vowel sound)

an hour (h is silent)

We use **a/an**

- with singular countable nouns when we want to say what somebody/something is or what someone's job is.



It is a dog.



She is a doctor.

We don't use **a/an**

- with uncountable or plural nouns. We can use **some** instead.

some chocolate

some eggs

- in front of an adjective when there is no noun after it. But when there is a noun after the adjective, we use **a** for adjectives which begin with a consonant sound and **an** for adjectives which begin with a vowel sound.



It is a car. It is fast.

It is a fast car.

It is also an expensive car.

1

First say, then write **a** or **an**.



1 ...**a**... leopard



2 astronaut



3 rabbit



4 old house



5 helicopter



6 owl



7 aeroplane



8 pineapple

ORAL Activity

First make sure you know the names of the things in the pictures. Then, look at the pictures for one minute. Finally, close your book and name as many things as possible using **a/an**.



The Definite Article "The"



Dogs are clever animals.
Dogs run fast.



The dog in the picture is big.
The dog's name is Buddy.

The definite article **the** is used with singular or plural nouns. e.g. **the** girl, **the** men, **the** house

We use the

- with nouns when we are talking about something specific, for example when the noun is mentioned for a second time or is already known. In other words, when we can answer the question "Who?" or "Which?".



I can see a car. **The** car is red. (Which car? The specific car which we can see in the picture.)

- with nouns which are unique.
the earth, the sky, the sun, the Parthenon, the Taj Mahal
- before the names of rivers, seas/oceans, mountain ranges, deserts and groups of islands/states.
the Nile, the Mediterranean, the Atlantic, the Alps, the Sahara, the Bahamas, the USA
- before the names of musical instruments.
the piano, the guitar, the violin
- before nationalities and names of families.
the Chinese, the Italians, the Smiths, the Browns
- before the words morning, afternoon, evening.
I go to school in the morning.

We don't use the

- with plural nouns when we talk about them in general.
Lions are wild animals. (Which lions? All lions in general.)
- before proper nouns.



This is Jane.

- before names of meals (breakfast, lunch, dinner, etc.) and games/sports (golf, tennis, basketball, etc.).



Tennis is an exciting sport.

- with the words **this/that/these/those**.
this car, those bicycles NOT: This ~~the~~ car
- with the words school, church, bed, hospital, prison, home when we refer to the purpose for which they exist.
John goes to school at 8:30 in the morning. (=John is a student.)

Pronunciation

The is pronounced /ðə/ before words which begin with a consonant sound (*the glass, the baby*).

The is pronounced /ði:/ before words which begin with a vowel sound (*the egg, the apple*).

2 First put the nouns in the correct box, then read them out.

car, roof, onion, girl, book, ox, actress, bus, key, apple, orange, elephant, knife, umbrella, watch, owl

The /ðə/		The /ði:/	
...car...	.....	...onion...	.....
.....
.....
.....

3 Write the where necessary.

- | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1 ...the... Amazon | 6 earth |
| 2 guitar | 7 Pacific |
| 3 Turks | 8 sky |
| 4 tennis | 9 lunch |
| 5 Sahara | 10 USA |

4 Write the where necessary.

- 1 ...The... book in the picture is red.
- 2 sea is blue.
- 3 Mike is a good student.
- 4 Mississippi is a long river in America.
- 5 basketball is a nice game.

5 Fill in: a, an or the where necessary.

- 1 ...The... Acropolis is in Athens.
- 2 I have got umbrella.
- 3 Sophia is from Italy. Italians are nice people.
- 4 Mr Smith is teacher. He is in classroom now.
- 5 Sally is actress. She is good actress.
- 6 New York is in USA.

6 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Jane is an painter.
- 2 I have got an uniform.
- 3 Helen isn't at the home.
- 4 The Pyramids are in the Egypt.
- 5 It is a hourglass.
- 6 The Mark is a student.
- 7 I have got a milk.
- 8 It is an house.
- 9 An earth is a planet.
- 10 They have got a old car.

7 Write the where necessary.

- 1 horses are lovely animals.
- 2 cheese is in fridge.
- 3 "We usually go to Spain for our summer holidays." "Really? We like to stay in England."
- 4 water is very dirty. You can't swim here.
- 5 "Where are children?" "They are playing in garden."

8 Fill in a, an or the where necessary.

- a Jim is from 1) Scotland. He's got 2) two brothers and 3) sister. They live with their mother and father in 4) big house in 5) countryside. Jim has lots of hobbies. He likes 6) football and he plays 7) guitar. He has 8) red bicycle. Every day he takes his dog for 9) walk in 10) park. His dog's name is 11) Spot.

- b Clare lives in 1) Liverpool. She is 2) secretary. She works in 3) office. She goes to work in 4) morning. She starts work at 9.00 and she goes 5) home at 5.00 in 6) evening. She likes her job because her boss is 7) kind man.



This/That/These/Those



A: **These** flowers are for you, Miss.
 B: Thank you, Tom.
 C: And **this** apple is for you, Miss.
 B: Oh, thanks, Kim.



A: What's **that**, Mum?
 B: It's a farmhouse.
 A: And what are **those**?
 B: They're cows. They give milk.

This/These are used to talk about/point to people, animals or things which are near us.

That/Those are used to talk about/point to people, animals or things which are far away from us.

Note: When we ask *What's this?/What are these?/What's that?/What are those?* we answer *It is (It's) or They are (They're)*.
 e.g. *What's this/that? It's an umbrella.*
 NOT: ~~This/That~~ is an umbrella.
What are these/those? They're hats.
 NOT: ~~These/Those~~ are hats.

Short Answers

When we ask *Is this...?/Is that...?/Are these...?/Are those...?* we use short answers:
 Yes, it is./No, it isn't./Yes, they are./No, they aren't.
 NOT: ~~Yes, this/that is.~~ or ~~No, this/that isn't.~~ etc.

Is this a camera?	Yes, it is./No, it isn't.
Are these sunglasses?	Yes, they are./No, they aren't.
Is that a helicopter?	Yes, it is./No, it isn't.
Are those birds?	Yes, they are./No, they aren't.

9

Fill in *this is, that is, these are or those are*.



1 **These are** my shoes.



2 an eagle.



3 balloons.



4 my hat.



5 palm trees.



6 my books.

10

Fill in the gaps with *it's, they're or what's*.



Billy: Look Dad! 1) ...**What's**... that?
 Dad: 2) a scorpion. Scorpions are very dangerous.
 Billy: And what are those?
 Dad: Those? 3) camels.
 Billy: 4) that?
 Dad: 5) a snake.
 Billy: It's horrible! And who are those people over there?
 Dad: 6) Bedouin. They live in tents in the desert.
 Billy: They look strange!

UNIT 3

Articles/This-That-These-Those

11

Fill in the speech bubbles with *this*, *that*, *these* or *those* and one of the words from the list.

flowers, clock, man, cake, shoes, car



ORAL Activity

The Browns are showing photographs from their holidays round the world to a friend. In pairs, look at the pictures. Ask and answer questions using *What's this?/What are these?* as in the example.

e.g. SA: *What's this?*
SB: *It's the Colosseum.*



1 the Colosseum



2 the Eiffel Tower



3 the Statue of Liberty



4 gondolas



5 a castle



6 a windmill



7 palm trees



8 the Pyramids

The Verbs "Have Got" - "Can"

"Have (got)"



What **have** they got?
They've **got** roller blades.
They **haven't got** skateboards.



A bird **has got** a beak, a tail and wings.



Has she got long hair?
No, she **hasn't**.
She's **got** short hair.



She **has got** a headache.

We use the verb **have (got)**:

- a) to show that something belongs to somebody e.g. He's got a ball.
- b) to describe people, animals or things e.g. She's got blue eyes.
- c) with the following expressions: *I've got a headache, I've got a temperature, I've got a cough, I've got toothache, I've got a cold, I've got a problem.*

Affirmative		Negative		Interrogative
Long form	Short form	Long form	Short form	
I have (got)	I've (got)	I have not (got)	I haven't (got)	Have I (got)?
You have (got)	You've (got)	You have not (got)	You haven't (got)	Have you (got)?
He has (got)	He's (got)	He has not (got)	He hasn't (got)	Has he (got)?
She has (got)	She's (got)	She has not (got)	She hasn't (got)	Has she (got)?
It has (got)	It's (got)	It has not (got)	It hasn't (got)	Has it (got)?
We have (got)	We've (got)	We have not (got)	We haven't (got)	Have we (got)?
You have (got)	You've (got)	You have not (got)	You haven't (got)	Have you (got)?
They have (got)	They've (got)	They have not (got)	They haven't (got)	Have they (got)?

1 guitar	2 long tail	3 cold
4 fishing rods	5 long hair	6 stripes

1 First say what they have got, then write as in the example.

- 1 He has got a guitar.
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6

UNIT 4

The Verbs "Have Got" - "Can"

2 Fill in *have got* or *has got*. Then write questions and negations, as in the example.

- Steven ...*has got*... a new car.
...*Has Steven got*... a new bicycle?
...*No, Steven hasn't got a new bicycle*....
- Sally an umbrella.
..... a hat?
.....
- Anna and Tom a parrot.
..... a horse?
.....
- The table four legs.
..... three legs?
.....
- They a white cat.
..... a black cat?
.....
- The dog a long tail.
..... a short tail?
.....
- Mike a computer.
..... a camera?
.....
- Julie a big house.
..... a small house?
.....

3 Look at the objects in the table. In pairs, ask and answer what you, your parents and your brother/sister *have/has got* or *haven't/hasn't got*, as in the example.

- e.g. SA: *Have you got a calculator?*
SB: *Yes, I have.*
SA: *Have your parents got a jeep?*
SB: *No, they haven't.*

You	Your Parents	Your Brother/Sister
 calculator	 jeep	 motorbike
 pet	 computer	 video camera
 bicycle	 mobile phone	 guitar

Note: *It's got* = It has got / *Tom's got* = Tom has got
It's = It is

Short Answers

In short answers we only use *Yes* or *No*, the subject pronoun and the verb *have (haven't)/has (hasn't)*. We don't use *got*.

e.g. *Have you got a car?* *Yes, I have.*

Have you got ... ?	Yes, I/we have. No, I/we haven't.
Has he/she/it got ... ?	Yes, he/she/it has. No, he/she/it hasn't.
Have they got ... ?	Yes, they have. No, they haven't.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences and write them out using the full form of the verbs, as in the example.

- she's/hair/blonde/got
She has got blonde hair.
- a / got / Tony's / red / ball
.....
- goldfish / seven / got / he's
.....
- a / it's / kite / yellow
.....
- a / got / they've / car / new
.....
- big / a / it's / house
.....

UNIT 4

The Verbs "Have Got" - "Can"

"Can"



Can they ride a horse?
Yes, they **can**.
They **can** ride a horse.



Can we play on the computer, please?

The verb **can** is the same in all persons in the singular and in the plural and is always followed by a verb. We use it:

- a) to show ability e.g. *I can sing.*
- b) to ask somebody to do something for us e.g. *Can you open the door, please?*
- c) to ask for something e.g. *Can I have a piece of cake, please?*
- d) to ask for permission to do something e.g. *Can we play on the computer, please?*

Affirmative	Negative		Interrogative
	Long form	Short form	
I can walk	I cannot walk	I can't walk	Can I walk?
You can walk	You cannot walk	You can't walk	Can you walk?
He can walk	He cannot walk	He can't walk	Can he walk?
She can walk	She cannot walk	She can't walk	Can she walk?
It can walk	It cannot walk	It can't walk	Can it walk?
We can walk	We cannot walk	We can't walk	Can we walk?
You can walk	You cannot walk	You can't walk	Can you walk?
They can walk	They cannot walk	They can't walk	Can they walk?

Note: the negative form *cannot* is one word.

7 Look at the pictures and ask and answer as in the example.

SA: *What can he do?*
SB: *He can ski.*



8 Make sentences which are true using can or can't.

- 1 An artist / paint pictures *An artist can paint pictures.*
- 2 A cat / fly *A cat can't fly.*
- 3 A monkey / climb trees
- 4 A leopard / run fast
- 5 A pilot / fly an aeroplane
- 6 A dog / talk
- 7 A fish / walk
- 8 An elephant / fly
- 9 A baker / make bread
- 10 A hamster / ride a bicycle

The Verbs "Have Got" - "Can"

Short Answers

Can I/you/he, etc. ...?

Yes, I/you/he, etc. can.

No, I/you/he, etc. can't.

9 Put a tick (✓) for each thing you can do and a cross (x) for each thing you can't do. Then, ask your partner what he/she can or can't do. Finally, tell the class what you and your friend can and can't do as in the example.

e.g. *I can speak English, cook spaghetti and draw but I can't play a musical instrument, drive a car or type. My friend Maria ...*

	I	My friend
play a musical instrument		
speak English		
cook spaghetti		
drive a car		
draw		
type		

10 For each of the situations below, fill in the gaps with *Can you or Can I* and a verb from the list.

borrow, carry, have, help



ORAL Activity

Jim Lawton is a stunt man. He can do many dangerous things, but there are some simple things that he can't do. Look at the pictures and in pairs ask and answer questions as in the example.

e.g. SA: *Can he drive a racing car?*
 SB: *Yes, he can.*



WRITING Activity

Jim Lawton had an accident. He broke his leg.

a) What can't he do now? Use the verbs from the list below to write sentences using *can't*.

drive - jump - dive - climb

e.g. *He can't drive a racing car.*

b) What can Jim do? Use the verbs from the list below to write sentences using *can*.

read - talk - write - watch - listen

e.g. *He can read a magazine.*

UNIT 5

Possessives

Possessive Case



This is John.
These are **John's** parents.
John's ball is white.



This is **Mary and Tony's** dog.



Jill's bicycle is red.
Bob's bicycle is blue.
These are **Jill's** and **Bob's** bicycles.

- ◆ We use the possessive case a) to show that something belongs to somebody e.g. *Mary's bag*, b) to explain the relationship between two or more people e.g. *Tom's uncle* and c) to talk about shops and houses.
e.g. *He's at the baker's.* (= He's at the baker's shop.)
They are at Bob's. (= They are at Bob's house.)

- ◆ The possessive case is formed in two ways:
a) with **'s** for people and animals e.g. *Jim's flat* and b) with the preposition **of** for things.



the legs **of** the table



the cat's tail

- ◆ Singular nouns or proper nouns take **'s**.
e.g. *the boy's ball*, *Emily's car*
When the proper noun ends in **-s** we add **'s** or only an apostrophe (**'**).
e.g. *Doris's hat* or *Doris' hat*
- ◆ Plural nouns ending in **-s** take **'** (apostrophe).
e.g. *the girls' house*
Irregular plural nouns take **'s**.
e.g. *the men's boat*

- ◆ When the same thing belongs to two or more people we add **'s** only to the last noun.



Paul and Tina's house.
(The house belongs to both of them.)

- ◆ When two or more things belong to two or more people and we want to show that each person has his/her own thing we add **'s** to each noun.



Mary's and Sarah's roller skates.
(Each girl has her own roller skates.)

- ◆ When we want to know to whom something belongs we use the question word **whose**.



Whose horse is this?
It's **Helen's**.

1 Ask and answer as in the example.



1 (car/Alan and Jane)
...*Whose car is this?*
It's Alan and Jane's...



2 (computer/Helen)
.....
.....
.....



3 (gloves/the boxers)
.....
.....
.....



4 (ball/the footballers)
.....
.....
.....



5 (teddy bear/Janet)
.....
.....
.....



6 (rackets/Ben and Rita)
.....
.....
.....

Pronunciation

The **s** of the possessive case is pronounced /s/, /z/ or /ɪz/. The pronunciation rules for the possessive case are the same as the rules for plural nouns.

/s/ /f/, /k/, /p/, /t/, /θ/
Cliff's, Frank's, Pat's

/z/ /s/, /ʒ/, /ʒ/, /dʒ/, /z/, /ʒ/
Alice's, Trish's, Mitch's

/ɪz/ after all other sounds
the woman's, the boy's, the dog's

2 Put the nouns in the correct list in the possessive case and read them out.

the girl, Tom, George, the cat, Beth, the child, Liz, Philip, Scott

/s/	/z/	/ɪz/
		the girl's

3 Choose the right item.

- **B** are green.
A The eyes of Helen B Helen's eyes
C Helens' eyes
- is old.
A My father's car B My fathers' car
C The car of my father
- are dirty.
A The shoes of the girls B The girls' shoes
C The girls shoes
- This is hamster.
A Peter B Peters' C Peter's
- Is this ?
A Melanies' house B Melanie's house
C the house of Melanie
- is Pippin.
A My cat's name B My cats' name
C My cats name
- are red.
A The trees leaves B The tree's leaves
C The leaves of the tree

Note: Tony's got = Tony has got
He's a ... = He is a ...
Tony's book = possessive case

4 Say if the 's is a possessive case, is or has.

- Kim's got a pet.
- This is Mr Dixon's house.
- Look at Steve's shoes.
- She's in France.
- He's ten years old.
- Go to Mr Baker's shop.
- Feed Helen's rabbit.
- She's a doctor.
- Darren's hair is black.
- He's got a blue ball.

UNIT 5

Possessives

Possessive Adjectives/ Pronouns



A: Is this **your** wallet?
 B: No, it isn't **mine**.
 A: Whose is it, then?
 B: I think it's Simon's. **His** wallet is brown.



A: Simon, is this wallet **yours**?
 C: Yes, it's **mine**. Thanks.

Possessive adjectives	Possessive pronouns
my	mine
your	yours
his	his
her	hers
its	— *
our	ours
your	yours
their	theirs

* Note: There is no possessive pronoun for the personal pronoun *it*.

- ◆ Possessive adjectives/pronouns show:
 - that something belongs to somebody,
 - and b) the relationship between two or more people. We put *possessive adjectives* before nouns. *Possessive pronouns* are not followed by nouns.

This is **my** bag. This bag is **mine**.
 That is **their** car. That car is **theirs**.

5 Write the possessive adjectives and pronouns.

	adjectives	pronouns
1 You	... <i>your</i>...	...<i>yours</i> ...
2 Mary
3 Andy and Sally
4 Mike
5 Mark and I
6 John
7 Susan and Kate
8 Helen
9 the dog
10 Jim and you

6 Underline the correct word.

- This is our/ours car.
- Is this yours/your house?
- Whose is this umbrella? It's my/mine.
- That bicycle is hers/her.
- Are these their/theirs books?
- Whose are these boots? Are they your/yours?
- This is mine/my camera.
- Is that her/hers dog?
- These aren't our/ours pens. They are your/ yours.
- She's mine/my sister. Her/Hers name is Ann.

7 Fill in the gaps with the correct possessive adjective (my, your, etc.) and one of the words from the list.

homework, flat, honeymoon, handbag, car, parents, umbrella

- Greg wants to buy a house. ...*His flat*... is too small.
- Gerry and Mary got married last week. They went to Hawaii for
- It's raining! Take with you.
- I have to take the bus to work tomorrow. has got a flat tyre.
- Ann lost when she was on holiday.
- My brother and I live in the city, but live in the country.
- Billy left his books at school and now he can't do

8 Look at the pictures. Match the objects with the people and make sentences, as in the example.



rackets

1 *These are the tennis players' rackets.
These are their rackets.
These rackets are theirs.*



spoons

2



camera

3



typewriter

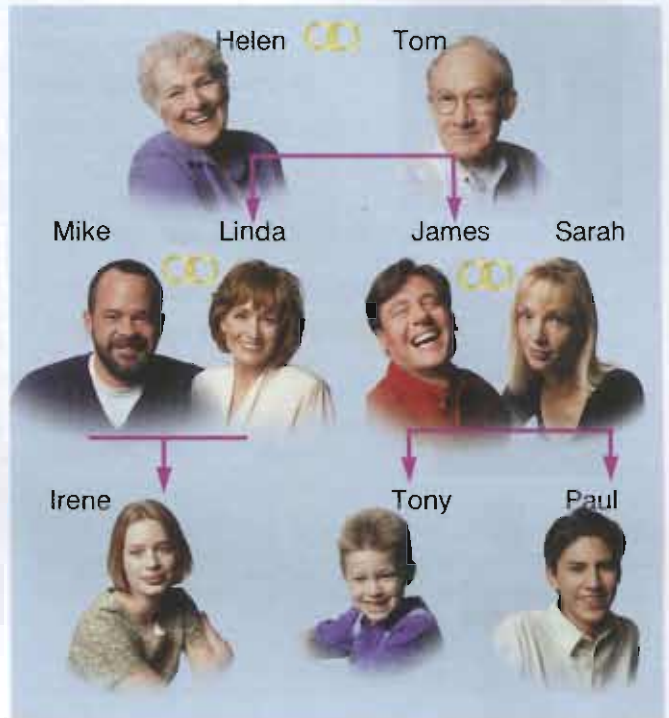
4



shoes

5

9 Look at the family tree and fill in the gaps in the answers below with the possessive case.



Who is Mike? He's 1) *...Linda's...* husband.
 Who is Paul? He's 2) and son.
 Who is Irene? She's 3) and daughter.
 Who is Sarah? She's 4) wife.
 Who is Helen? She's 5) and mother.
 Who is Tony? He's 6) brother.

10 Fill in the blanks with the correct possessive adjective.

Helen and Tom are having their 50th wedding anniversary.

Tom: Are Linda and 1) *...her...* husband coming to 2) party tomorrow night?

Helen: Yes. 3) daughter is coming too.

Tom: Did you remember to invite James and 4) wife?

Helen: Yes, but I don't think 5) sons are coming.

Tom: Oh yes. Tony and 6) brother are in Spain for the summer holidays.

Helen: Shall we invite some of 7) friends, then?

Tom: Yes. Why not?

UNIT 5

Possessives

11 Make sentences using the possessive case ('s or of+noun).



1 door/house/yellow
The door of the house is yellow.



2 owl/eyes/round
The owl's eyes are round.



3 nurse/uniform/white



4 handle/briefcase/small



5 kangaroo/tail/long



6 hands/clock/black



7 clown/clothes/funny



8 leaves/rose/green

12 Fill in the gaps in the dialogue with my/your. Then, in pairs, act out the dialogue.

A: Good afternoon, officer.
 B: Good afternoon. How can I help you?
 A: I have lost 1) ...my... bag.
 B: What was in 2) bag?
 A: 3) purse, 4) keys and 5) passport.
 B: Okay. What is 6) address, please?
 A: 7) address is 24 Park Lane, London.
 B: And 8) telephone number?
 A: It is 01-658-9254.
 B: That's all. Thank you, madam.
 A: Thank you very much. Goodbye.

13 Choose the correct word.

- Excuse me, is this pen ...A... ?
 A yours B you C your
- This is Sarah. is my sister.
 A She B Hers C Her
- Mr and Mrs Tate live next door. This is dog.
 A ours B his C their
- Jason lives in a big house. It belongs to father.
 A he B his C him
- We take children to the park every afternoon.
 A our B ours C hers
- are all going to the beach.
 A Their B They C Theirs

14 Fill in the gaps with the correct possessive pronoun or adjective.



15 Put the words in the right order.

- 1 photo / this / is / yours
- 2 hat / a / on / head / has / his / got / Phil
- 3 record / cousin's / this / isn't / my
- 4 socks / your / these / are / ?
- 5 got / you / bag / my / have / ?
- 6 is / long / it's / its / and / a / giraffe / neck

16 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Mine room is big.
- 2 The tail of the dog is long.
- 3 The womens' dresses are red.
- 4 Are those pencils your?
- 5 That is Mike's and Helen's house.
- 6 "Whose are these rackets?" "They're their".
- 7 This is hers book.
- 8 Those are Rita and Jim's bicycles.
- 9 Is that Kates' hat?
- 10 The house's windows are green.

ORAL
Activity

Read the information about Philippa and Colin. Then, in pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.

- e.g. SA: *What is Philippa's favourite hobby?*
SB: *Her favourite hobby is reading.*
SA: *What is Colin's favourite hobby?*
SB: *His favourite hobby is fishing.*

	PHILIPPA	COLIN
Hobby	Reading	Fishing
Food	Pizza	Pizza
Film	"Batman"	"Superman"
Sport	Swimming	Swimming
Colour	Blue	Green

Now complete the table below with information about yourself. Then, ask questions to find out information about your partner, as in the example:

- e.g. SA: *What is your favourite hobby?*
SB: *My favourite hobby is*

	YOU	YOUR PARTNER
Hobby		
Food		
Film		
Sport		
Colour		

WRITING
Activity

Look at the oral activity and fill in the gaps with the correct possessive adjective / pronoun or possessive case.

Philippa and Colin are friends. They have hobbies. 1) hobby is reading but 2) is fishing. 3) favourite food is pizza. Philippa and Colin like films. 4) favourite film is "Batman" but 5) is "Superman". They both enjoy sports. 6) favourite sport is swimming. 7) favourite colour is blue but 8) is green.

Now, write a similar text about you and your friend. Start like this.

My favourite hobby is

Revision 1 (Units 1 - 5)

1 Write the plural of the following words.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 mouse <i>mice</i> | 6 book |
| 2 this car | 7 this watch |
| 3 sheep | 8 child |
| 4 that monkey | 9 that umbrella |
| 5 policeman | 10 tooth |

2 Turn the uncountable nouns into countables.

- Some milk. Two ...*glasses/cartons of milk*...
- Some Coke. Two
- Some jam. Two
- Some rice. Two
- Some tea. Two
- Some cheese. Two
- Some bread. Two
- Some dog food. Two

3 Fill in the correct subject pronoun and am, is or are.

- Terry: How old are you?
Anne: ...*I am*... twelve.
- Kate: Where's my hat?
Fred: on the chair.
- Bill: Is Jack at home?
Stan: No, at school.
- Pat: Where are your cats?
Marie: in the garden.
- Paul: How is Liz?
Jenny: fine.
- Helen: Where are you from?
Tim and Rick: from the USA.

4 Fill in: a, an or the where necessary.

- It's ...*a*... lovely day. Let's go to beach.
- Peter wants to be astronaut.
- "Where are students?" "They're in classroom."
- Mrs Peters is old lady. She likes music and she plays cards with her friends.
- moon isn't planet.
- French are nice people.

5 Fill in the where necessary.

- ...*The*... Thames is a river in UK.
- I'm very tired. I want to go to bed.
- My grandfather is ill. He's in hospital.
- British drink a lot of tea.
- Helen is an excellent cook.
- He goes to work in evening.
He's a night watchman.
- I'm going to library. I want to borrow some books.
- Alps are in Switzerland.
- Peter is at school. He's taking an exam today.
- "Is this car very expensive?" "Yes, it is."

6 Look at the pictures and write what these people have got and what they can do.

 <p>1</p> <p>car / drive</p>	 <p>2</p> <p>book / read</p>
 <p>3</p> <p>skis / ski</p>	 <p>4</p> <p>camera / take photos</p>
 <p>5</p> <p>ball / play rugby</p>	 <p>6</p> <p>microphone/ sing</p>

- ...*He has got a car. He can drive.*...
-
-
-
-
-

7 Write questions and negations as in the example.

- 1 They're Canadian.
... *Are they Canadian?* ...
... *They aren't Canadian.* ...
- 2 Susan has got a pet.
.....
- 3 Bill can dive.
.....
- 4 It's an old house.
.....
- 5 They've got stamps.
.....

8 Fill in the correct subject pronouns and possessive adjectives.



Alison Bright is 1) *my* cousin. 2) is twenty years old. 3) lives with 4) family in a farmhouse in the country. 5) house is old and very big. Alison's father is a farmer. 6) job is very tiring. Alison helps 7) father every day. 8) start work early in the morning and finish late in the evening. Alison loves horses. 9) favourite horse is "Sunshine". Alison is very nappy with 10) life on the farm.

9 Underline the correct word.

- 1 This is the dog's/dogs bone.
- 2 That's Dad's/Dads' car.
- 3 Those are the man's/mans gloves.
- 4 These are the girl's/girls' houses.
- 5 This is Linda's/Lindas hat.

10 Rewrite the sentences as in the example.

- 1 This is my bag. ... *It is mine.* ...
- 2 These are her books. ... *They are hers.* ...
- 3 This is our car. ... It
- 4 Those are his shoes.
- 5 This is your cup.
- 6 Those are their skates.

11 Choose the correct answer.

- 1 I am from ... *C* ... England.
A a B the C -
- 2 There is book on the table.
A - B a C an
- 3 There's sugar in the bowl.
A some B a C the
- 4 apples are delicious!
A This B These C That
- 5 There's mouse in the cupboard!
A some B an C a
- 6 ring is very expensive.
A Those B That C These
- 7 This is a uniform.
A soldier's B soldiers' C soldier
- 8 Andrew is two years old. He spell his name.
A has B can't C not
- 9 These are the toys.
A children B childrens' C children's
- 10 That name is Melanie.
A girls' B girl C girl's

12 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 There is a elephant in the garden.
- 2 That is Bill's car. It's him.
- 3 There are wolfs in the forest.
- 4 There's a bread on the table.
- 5 There's a money in my pocket.
- 6 They go to the school every day.
- 7 My bicycle has got two wheel.
- 8 She's got an book.

UNIT 6

Present Continuous



Is the sun **shining**?
 Yes, it is.
 Are the people **swimming**?
 No, they aren't.
 What **are** they **doing**?
 They're **walking** along the beach.



What **are** they **doing** now?
 They're **sun-bathing**.

We form the present continuous with the auxiliary verb **to be** and the main verb with the **-ing** suffix.

Affirmative		Negative		Interrogative
Long form	Short form	Long form	Short form	
I am working	I'm working	I am not working	I'm not working	Am I working?
You are working	You're working	You are not working	You aren't working	Are you working?
He is working	He's working	He is not working	He isn't working	Is he working?
She is working	She's working	She is not working	She isn't working	Is she working?
It is working	It's working	It is not working	It isn't working	Is it working?
We are working	We're working	We are not working	We aren't working	Are we working?
You are working	You're working	You are not working	You aren't working	Are you working?
They are working	They're working	They are not working	They aren't working	Are they working?

Spelling Rules

- ◆ Verbs ending in **-e** drop the **-e** and take the **-ing** suffix. **write** ⇒ **writing** but **see** - **seeing**
- ◆ Verbs ending in **one stressed vowel** between **two consonants**, double the last consonant and take the **-ing** suffix. **sit** ⇒ **sitting**, **swim** ⇒ **swimming** but **open** - **opening**
- ◆ Verbs ending in **-l**, double the **l** and take the **-ing** suffix. **travel** ⇒ **travelling**
- ◆ Verbs ending in **-le**, drop the **-le** and take **-y + ing**. **lie** ⇒ **lying**, **die** ⇒ **dying**

1

Add -ing to the verbs and put them in the correct box.

walk, dance, swim, shop, lie, study, laugh, write, play, smoke, look, stop, sleep, die, run

+ ing	-ie ⇒ y + ing
walking	
-e ⇒ ing	double consonant + ing

Use

We use the present continuous for:

- actions happening now, at the moment of speaking.



They are walking in the park now.

- temporary actions happening around now but not at the actual moment of speaking.



She is working hard these days. (Right now she is not working. She is yawning.)

Time Expressions

Time expressions used with the present continuous are:

now, at the moment, at present, these days, etc.

2 Fill in with the present continuous.

- He *is sitting* (sit) at the desk.
- They (play) football.
- She (eat) dinner.
- You (read) a book.
- The dog (sleep).
- Ann (swim).
- I (watch) TV.
- Tony (write) a letter.
- The birds (sing).
- Mum (make) a cake.

3 Write questions and negations, as in the examples.

- He is riding a bicycle.
...Is he riding a bicycle?...
...He isn't riding a bicycle....
- They are listening to the radio.

- She is drinking Coke.

- You are dancing.

- We are playing basketball.

- I am running.

4 Look at the pictures. Then, fill in the gaps with the correct verb in the present continuous.



- Look at that kangaroo! It *...is carrying..* its baby.
- Henry the car at the moment.
- Look at Helen! She her dog for a walk.
- John is late for work. He to catch the bus.
- Be quiet! Dad
- Susan is in her bedroom. She her suitcase.
- Mary is in the kitchen. She a cake.
- The children aren't in the house. They in the garden.
- She is busy. She a letter.

UNIT 6

Present Continuous

Short Answers

In short answers we use only **Yes** or **No**, the subject pronoun and the auxiliary verb **to be**. We do not repeat the main verb with the **-ing** suffix.

e.g. *Are you studying?* Yes, I am.

Are you ...?	Yes, I am/we are.	No, I'm not/we aren't.
Is he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it is.	No, he/she/it isn't.
Are they ...?	Yes, they are.	No, they aren't.

5

Look at the picture, then, in pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the examples.



- (Jim / wash his car)
SA: *Is Jim washing his car?* SB: *Yes, he is.*
- (Tom / read a newspaper)
SA: *Is Tom reading a newspaper?*
SB: *No, he isn't. He's painting the gate.*
- (Ann / cut the grass)
- (the children / knit)
- (dogs / chase a cat)
- (postman / deliver letters)
- (Grandmother / stand by the gate)
- (Grandfather / write a letter)

6

Look at the picture and put the verbs in brackets into the present continuous.



The people **1** ...*are walking*... (**walk**) along the road. They **2** (**wear**) trousers and jackets. The boy **3** (**push**) his bicycle. He **4** (**walk**) away from the other people. He **5** (**wear**) trousers and a sweater. He **6** (**wear**) a helmet on his head.

NOTE: When the verb **have** is used in the present continuous it does not express possession but action.

e.g. I'm having a bath. (= I'm in the bath.)
I'm having a shower. (= I'm in the shower.)
I'm having a lesson. (= I'm doing a lesson.)
I'm having breakfast/lunch/dinner. (= I'm eating breakfast/lunch/dinner.)

7

In pairs, ask and answer questions as in the example.

- answer the phone / have a bath
SA: *...Can you answer the phone?...*
SB: *...No, I'm sorry. I'm having a bath....*
- open the door / wash the dishes
.....
.....
- help in the garden / do my homework
.....
.....
- come to the phone / have a lesson
.....
.....
- tidy your room / write a letter
.....
.....
- help me with these bags / have a shower
.....
.....

8 In pairs, act out similar dialogues using the prompts below, as in the example.

e.g. Grandpa / kitchen / cook

e.g. Mum / Grandpa / kitchen / feed the dog

A

A: Grandpa, where are you?
 B: I'm in the kitchen.
 A: What are you doing?
 B: I'm cooking.

B

A: Mum, where is Grandpa?
 B: He's in the kitchen.
 A: What's he doing?
 B: He's feeding the dog.

Dad / Mum / living room / watch TV
 Grandma / garden / water the flowers
 Helen / Tom / dining room / have dinner
 Helen / bathroom / wash my hair
 Dad / uncle Phil / garage / clean his bike

9 Look at the picture and put the verbs in brackets into the present continuous.



There are three people in the kitchen. The man with the white hair 1) *is sitting* (sit) at the table. He 2) (wear) a white shirt and a green apron. He 3) (put) the food on the plates. The other man and the woman 4) (stand) next to the cupboards. They 5) (prepare) food.

10 Describe this picture using the present continuous of the verbs in the list.

sit, smile, wear, hold, eat



11 Look at the pictures and fill in the blanks with the correct verb from the list in the present continuous.

shine, try, drink, use



UNIT 6

Present Continuous

12 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1 coming / the train / is?
Is the train coming?
- 2 why / is / barking / the dog?
.....
- 3 talking / phone / not / is / he / the / on.
.....
- 4 suitcases / are / packing / they / their.
.....
- 5 not / watching / she / is / TV.
.....
- 6 where / your / staying / are / friends?
.....
- 7 learning / am / at the moment / play / I / to / golf.
.....
- 8 you / going / shops / are / to / the?
.....

13 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 We looking for a new flat.
- 2 I am play tennis now.
- 3 George and Mary is watching TV.
- 4 What are you do?
- 5 You isn't listening to the teacher.
- 6 He reading a magazine.

14 Match the questions with the answers.

- 1 Why is she singing? ...C...
- 2 What are you writing?
- 3 Where is he staying?
- 4 What are they watching?
- 5 Who is he talking to?
- 6 Are you leaving now?

- A At the Windsor Hotel.
- B Yes, I am.
- C Because she's happy.
- D A horror film.
- E Mr Brown.
- F A letter.

ORAL Activity

Students look at the picture in exercise 5. Each student chooses to be a person. The teacher invites one student to the front of the class. The other students ask "the leader" questions to find out who he/she is. The student who guesses correctly becomes the next leader.

- e.g. S1: Are you washing the car?
Leader: No, I'm not.
S2: Are you reading a newspaper?
Leader: No, I'm not.
S3: Are you painting the gate?
Leader: Yes, I am.
S4: Are you Tom?
Leader: Yes, I am.

WRITING Activity

Look at the picture and put the verbs in brackets into the present continuous.



This is a photo of my mother and our dog. Flash. Mum 1)

(work) on our boat. She 2)

(clean) the

deck. She 3) (use) a mop and a bucket of water. She 4) (wear) trousers and a sweater. Flash 5) (lie) on the floor. He 6) (look) at my mother.

Now, describe one of your photographs as in the example.



This is a photo of

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Object Pronouns/The Imperative

Object Pronouns



This is a picture of **me** and my dog, Rex. I love **him** very much. I look after **him**. I think he loves **me** too.

Object pronouns are personal pronouns which go after a verb or a preposition as objects.

e.g. I love **them**. Listen to **her**.

Subject Pronouns		Object Pronouns
I	→	me
you	→	you
he	→	him
she	→	her
it	→	it
we	→	us
you	→	you
they	→	them

Note: object pronouns go after verbs as objects, but subject pronouns go before verbs as subjects.
e.g. Look at **them**! **They** are acrobats.

1 Look at the pictures and make sentences using **Look at ...** and the correct **object pronoun**. e.g. *Look at them.*



2 Underline the correct pronoun.

- Look at **they/them**.
- I/Me** am swimming.
- Her/She** has got a blue dress.
- Give that ball to **me/I**.
- Where is **her/she**?
- Do you want to play with **we/us**?
- He/Him** isn't coming to the party.
- I/Me** have got a motorbike.
- Listen to **he/him**.
- Do you know **she/her**?

3 Replace each word in bold with a **subject or object pronoun** as in the example.

- Emily likes **cream cakes**. ...*She likes them*....
- John** is afraid of **mice**.
.....
- Caroline** is coming with **Bill and me**.
.....
- This present** is for **my father**.
.....
- My brother** is talking to **those people**.
.....
- My sister and I** live near **you and Tom**.
.....
- Those flowers** belong to **Helen**.
.....
- Is **this book** for **you and Matthew**?
.....

4 Fill in the correct **subject or object pronoun**.

- "Do you know that girl?" "Yes, I live next door to **her**."
- I can't find my shoes. Where are
- Come here, John! I need to talk to
- We're playing cards. Do you want to join
- I think we're lost. Where are
- I can't find my glasses. I don't remember where I put
- I like Mrs Baker. is very kind.
- My uncle has a new house. built it himself.

The Imperative



Write your name on the paper.
 Don't talk, please!
 Give that piece of paper to me, Ann.

- ◆ The imperative is formed with the verb without a subject. e.g. *Sit down*. The negative imperative is formed with *Do not / Don't* and the verb. e.g. *Do not / Don't talk to him*. The imperative refers to the second person singular and plural. e.g. *Take your books*.
- ◆ We use the imperative to:
 - a) give orders, e.g. *Stop that noise!*
 - b) give instructions, e.g. *Cut the paper into two pieces.*
 - c) offer something, e.g. *Have some cake.*
 - d) make a request. We usually add the word *please* at the beginning or at the end of the sentence. e.g. *Be quiet, please.* or *Please be quiet.*
- ◆ We use **let's + verb** to make suggestions. e.g. *Let's help her.*

5 Match the sentences with the pictures. What does the imperative show in each picture: order, instruction, request, suggestion or offer?

Let's read the map. / Stick the red paper here. / Read this, please. / Try some of this. / Don't go into the sea again! / Don't move, please.



1 ... *Stick the red paper here.* ... (instruction)



2



3



4



5



6

6 Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs from the list. Use each verb only once. Which sentences need *Don't*? Which need *Let's*? Which only need the verb?

wake, break, wash, turn on, play, move, open, close, be, have

- 1 I'm bored. ... *Let's play*... a game.
- 2 Always your hands before you sit at the table.
- 3 The baby is sleeping. her.
- 4 It's our anniversary next week. a party.
- 5 late! Your father will be angry.
- 6 ! There's a spider on your head.
- 7 That vase is expensive. it.
- 8 the oven door and put the meat inside.
- 9 It's getting dark. the light, please.
- 10 I'm cold. the windows, please.

7 Rewrite the sentences in the negative, replacing the words in bold with object pronouns, as in the example.

- 1 Give **John** the ball! ... *Don't give him the ball!* ...
- 2 Look at **Julie**!
- 3 Eat **the** ice-cream!
- 4 Tell **Susan** the news!
- 5 Look at **the** cat!
- 6 Listen to **Anna and Mark**!
- 7 Give the money to **Helen and me**!
- 8 Open **the** window!
- 9 Look at **the** children!
- 10 Make a sandwich for **Sam**!

8 Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs from the list in the correct form.

have - ask - make - touch



9 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Tim and Ann are my cousins. Them live in Germany.
- 2 You look at that dog! It is eating a bone.
- 3 That is my jacket. Give it to I, please.
- 4 Pass me those photographs. I want to look at it.
- 5 It's Mike on the phone. Him wants to talk to you.
- 6 "Are you going to the park?" "Yes. Please come with I."
- 7 Don't opens the window! It's cold.

ORAL
Activity

Look at the pictures. What does each person say? Use the verbs in the list to make sentences in the imperative.

smile - take off/clothes - open/mouth - move - lie down - look at/camera - take/deep breath



WRITING
Activity

Complete the sentences with the correct verb from the list. You can use one verb twice.

take, light, put, cut, make, don't throw

HOW TO MAKE A HALLOWE'EN PUMPKIN LAMP



- 1 a piece from the top of the pumpkin.
- 2 the piece away.
- 3 out the inside with a spoon.
- 4 eyes, a nose and a mouth with a knife.
- 5 a candle inside the pumpkin.
- 6 the candle.
- 7 the top back on.

Now you've got a beautiful pumpkin lamp. Happy Hallowe'en!!!

UNIT 8

There Is-Are / Some-Any-No

There is/There are



There is a sofa in the room. There are two pictures on the wall. There isn't a TV in the room. What else is there in the room?

- ◆ We use **there is/there are** to say that something/someone exists. The short form of **there is** is **there's**. There are hasn't got a short form. e.g. *There is (There's) a sofa in the room. There are four children in the garden.*
- ◆ The question form is: **Is there? / Are there?** e.g. *Is there a restaurant in the town? Are there any apples in the basket?*
- ◆ The negative form is: **There isn't.../There aren't...** e.g. *There is not/isn't a man in the room. There are not/aren't any cars in the street.*

Short Answers

In short answers we use **Yes** or **No**, **there is/isn't** or **there are/aren't**. We do not repeat the whole question.

Is there ...?	Yes, there is . No, there isn't .
Are there ...?	Yes, there are . No, there aren't .

1 Fill in the gaps with **there is** or **there are** in the correct form.

- 1 ...**There are**... lots of rooms in the Royal Hotel. It is very big.
- 2 twenty-five children in my class.
- 3 "..... any biscuits left?" "No, I'm sorry, I ate them all."

- 4 It is winter now. any leaves on the trees.
- 5 "Can we listen to some music?" "No, a radio in this room."
- 6 "Can I have some sugar in my coffee?" "No, I'm afraid any left."

2

Look at the picture and fill in **there is/there isn't or **there are/there aren't**.**



- 1 ...**There is**... a park in the picture.
- 2 some people in the park.
- 3 a supermarket in the picture.
- 4 any cars in the street.

Now, in pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts, as in the example.

a bus / a restaurant / trees / a lamppost / office blocks

SA: *Is there a bus?* SB: *No, there isn't.*

We use **there is/there are** to say what exists and **it is/they are** to talk about what we have already mentioned.

e.g. **There is** a house in the picture.

It is a big house.

(NOT: ~~It's a house in the picture.~~)

There are three books on the desk.

They are history books.

(NOT: ~~They are three books on the desk.~~)

3

Fill in **there is/are, **it is** or **they are**.**

- 1 ...**There is**... a letter on your desk. ...**It is**...from your uncle.
- 2 some people in the office.
- 3 "Where's my football?" "..... in the garden."
- 4 Look! a beautiful rainbow in the sky.
- 5 two parks in this town. quite big.
- 6 a box on the desk. Laura's.

Some/Any/No



There is **some** cake.
There is **some** sugar in the bowl.
Is there **any** bread?
No, there isn't.



There are **some** eggs.
There is **no** coffee.
Are there **any** carrots?
Yes, there are.

◆ We use **some**, **any** and **no** with uncountable nouns (e.g. sugar, bread, etc.) and plural countable nouns (e.g. pens, cars, etc.).

◆ We use **any** in questions and **not any** in negations.



some bread
(a little bread)



some cherries
(a few cherries)

e.g. Have you got **any** money?
No, I haven't got **any** money.

◆ We can use **no** instead of **not any** in negations.

e.g. I haven't got **any** money. / I have got **no** money.

◆ **Some** means a little or a few. We use **some** in positive statements.

Note: We use **some** in questions when we are making an offer or when we are asking for something.

e.g. I've got **some** money. (= I've got a little money.)

e.g. Would you like **some** coffee? (offer)
Can I have **some** coffee, please? (request)

4 Look at pictures A and B again. In pairs, ask and answer questions about each picture, as in the example.

(Picture A) SA: Is there any coffee?
SB: Yes, there is some.
SA: Are there any carrots?
SB: No, there aren't any.

- 8 I haven't got homework to do tonight.
- 9 I'm looking for paper, but I can't find
- 10 We can't make a cake because we've got sugar.

5 Fill in the gaps with some, any or no.

- 1 "Would you like ...**some**... cake?" "No, thank you."
- 2 I'm going to the baker's. I need bread.
- 3 I haven't got pets.
- 4 Have you got fresh eggs?
- 5 Don't buy butter. We have in the fridge.
- 6 I'm hungry. Can I have sandwiches, please?
- 7 He's got money, so he can't buy a hamburger.

6 Fill in some or any. Then, in pairs, act out the dialogue.

Peter: Hello Julia, are you ready for the party?
Julia: I've got 1) **some** lemonade, 2) orange juice and lots of food.
Peter: Have you got 3) cakes?
Julia: No, I must buy 4) I must also buy 5) biscuits.
Peter: Have you got 6) party hats or decorations?
Julia: No, I haven't, but I'm going to buy 7) of those, too.

Somebody / Something / Somewhere



There is **somebody** in the picture. It's a baby.
 Is **anybody** with the baby?
 No. There is **nobody** with her.
 Has the baby got **anything** in her hands?
 Yes, she's got **something**, but I don't know what it is.
 Where is she?
 She's **somewhere** in the countryside.

◆ **Somebody/someone** (a person), **something** (a thing) and **somewhere** (in/to/at a place) are used in positive statements.

e.g. There is **somebody** at the door.
 I want to go **somewhere** tonight.

◆ **Anybody/anyone**, **anything** and **anywhere** are used in questions and negations.

e.g. Is there **anything** on the table?
 There **isn't anything** on the table.

◆ **Nobody/no one**, **nothing** and **nowhere** can be used in negations instead of not anybody/not anything/not anywhere.

Compare: There **isn't anything** on the table.
 = There **is nothing** on the table.
 I **can't see anybody** in the garden.
 = I **can see nobody** in the garden.

	Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
People	someone somebody	anyone anybody	no one / not anyone nobody /not anybody
Things	something	anything	nothing / not anything
Places	somewhere	anywhere	nowhere/not anywhere

Who?	somebody/anybody/nobody
What?	something/anything/nothing
Where?	somewhere/anywhere/nowhere

7 Answer the following questions with **nobody** (no one), **nothing** or **nowhere**.

- 1 "What did you buy?" "...**Nothing**..."
- 2 "Who phoned?" "....."
- 3 "Where are you going?" "....."
- 4 "Who told you that?" "....."

8 Fill in the gaps with **something**, **somebody** (someone), **anything** or **anybody** (anyone).

- 1 I'm looking for ...**something**... in this box, but I can't find it.
- 2 Hello? Is there at home?
- 3 is calling me. I don't know who it is.
- 4 "Is there in your suitcase?"
"No, it's empty."
- 5 My foot hurts. There's in my shoe.
- 6 The shop is closed. I can't see inside.
- 7 I want to buy for my sister.
- 8 "..... is talking to Jim." "Yes, it's my mum."

9 Fill in the gaps with **nobody** (no one), **nothing**, **anyone** (anybody) or **anything**.

- 1 It's a secret, don't tell ...**anyone**...
- 2 I can't find my glasses. Does know where they are?
- 3 I'm going to the shop. Do you want ?
- 4 I live alone. lives with me.
- 5 "What did you say?" "....."
- 6 I don't know about French history.

10 Fill in the gaps with **somewhere**, **anywhere** or **nowhere**.

- 1 I don't like this café. I want to go ...**somewhere**... else.
- 2 I put my umbrella, but I can't remember where.
- 3 We aren't going this summer.
- 4 You can't go tonight. You must study.
- 5 I can't find Tom. He is!
- 6 "Where is the pen?" "It's in this drawer."

There Is-Are / Some-Any-No

11 Fill in the gaps with *anything, something, somewhere, somebody (someone) or anywhere*. Then, in pairs, act out the dialogue.

- A: What are you reading?
 B: I'm reading 1) *...something...* about John Harris.
 A: What does it say?
 B: Well, he doesn't go 2) alone. There's always a bodyguard with him.
 A: What else does it say?
 B: Let me see. Oh, he's looking for a new house 3) in Europe. He wants to buy 4) old, like a castle.
 A: Imagine that!
 B: That's not all. It says here that he wants to marry 5) with a lot of money.
 A: Come on, Bessy. I don't believe 6) in that magazine.

12 Fill in the gaps with one of the words from the list.
anybody - some - somewhere



13 Choose the correct answer.



Melissa is shopping. She wants to buy (1) *...B...* new clothes. She is going to a party tonight, but she has got (2) to wear. She wants to buy (3) nice and (4) new shoes but she can't find (5) that she likes. She is also looking for a present. She wants to buy (6) special for her friend, but there isn't (7) nice in this department store, so she's thinking of going (8) else.

- | | | | |
|---|------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1 | A anything | B some | C any |
| 2 | A anything | B something | C nothing |
| 3 | A some | B any | C something |
| 4 | A no | B some | C any |
| 5 | A some | B anything | C any |
| 6 | A nothing | B anything | C something |
| 7 | A nothing | B anything | C something |
| 8 | A anywhere | B somewhere | C nowhere |

14 Write questions and negations as in the example.

- 1 There are some pens in the bag.
...Are there any pens in the bag?...
...There aren't any pens in the bag....
...There are no pens in the bag....

UNIT 8

There Is-Are / Some-Any-No

- 2 He's got something in his hand.
.....
.....
- 3 There is somebody in the garden.
.....
.....
- 4 There is some meat in the fridge.
.....
.....
- 5 The dog is somewhere in the house.
.....
.....

15 Match Column A with Column B to make short dialogues.

COLUMN A

- 1 I haven't got any money. *d*
- 2 There's no coffee left.
- 3 I hate this place.
- 4 I'm hungry.
- 5 I've got nothing to wear.
- 6 Do you want anything else?

COLUMN B

- a Let's go somewhere else.
- b Let's cook some spaghetti.
- c Go and buy some new clothes.
- d I can lend you some.
- e No thank you.
- f I'm making another pot.

16 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Have you got some sugar?
- 2 There is any bread.
- 3 There are some pie.
- 4 Is there nobody in the room?
- 5 We haven't got some ham.
- 6 There isn't nobody in the garden.
- 7 There isn't no bacon.
- 8 Have you got nothing in your bag?

ORAL Activity

Look at the table below. What is there at the Paradise Hotel? In pairs, ask and answer as in the example.

SA: Is there a swimming pool at the hotel?
SB: Yes, there is.

PARADISE HOTEL	
swimming pool	 ✓
tennis courts	 ✓
golf course	 X
disco	 X
restaurant	 ✓
shops	 X
café	 ✓
bar	 ✓

WRITING Activity

You're staying at the Paradise Hotel and you're writing a letter to a friend. Complete the letter saying what *there is/isn't* or *there are/aren't* at the hotel.

Dear (your friend's name),

I'm staying at the Paradise Hotel. It is great!
There is a swimming pool, a,
a and a There are
some too, but there isn't a
..... or a

There aren't shops either, but
I'm having lots of fun.
See you soon.

Best wishes,
.....
(your name)



Polar bears **don't live** in hot places. They **live** in the North Pole. **Do they eat** fruit and vegetables? No, **they don't**. They **eat** fish.



Olivia **likes** red roses. She **spends** a lot of time in her garden. **Does she work** in the garden every day? Yes, **she does**.

We form the present simple with the subject (i.e. the subject pronoun or noun) and the main verb. We usually add an **-s** to the third person singular in the affirmative. In the interrogative and negative forms we use the auxiliary verb **do/don't** with *I, you, we* and *they* and **does/doesn't** with *he, she* and *it*. We do not add an **-s** to the main verb when it appears with *does/doesn't*.

Affirmative		Negative		Interrogative
		Long form	Short form	
I work		I do not work	I don't work	Do I work?
You work		You do not work	You don't work	Do you work?
He works		He does not work	He doesn't work	Does he work?
She works		She does not work	She doesn't work	Does she work?
It works		It does not work	It doesn't work	Does it work?
We work		We do not work	We don't work	Do we work?
You work		You do not work	You don't work	Do you work?
They work		They do not work	They don't work	Do they work?

Spelling Rules

- Most verbs take **-s** in the third person singular.
- Verbs ending in **-ss, -sh, -ch, -x** and **-o** take **-es**.
I miss - he **misses**, I finish - he **finishes**, I watch - he **watches**, I mix - he **mixes**, I go - he **goes**
- Verbs ending in a **consonant + y**, drop the **y** and take **-ies**.
I study - he **studies**, I cry - he **cries**
- Verbs ending in a **vowel + y**, take **-s**.
I play - he **plays**

1 Write the **third person singular** of the verbs in the list in the correct box.

dance, brush, open, try, fix, buy, put, kiss, like, dry, go, catch, wash, sit, fly, copy, teach, play, pass, begin, say

-s	-es	-ies
dances	brushes	tries
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

UNIT 9

Present Simple

Pronunciation

The suffix of the third person singular is pronounced:

- ◆ /s/ when the verb ends in /f/, /k/, /p/ or /t/ sounds.
laughs, kicks, stops, sits
- ◆ /ɪz/ when the verb ends in /s/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/ or /z/ sounds.
kisses, washes, watches, changes, closes
- ◆ /z/ when the verb ends in any other sound.
swims, plays, runs, reads, studies

Use

The present simple is used for:

- ◆ repeated actions or daily routines (usually with time expressions such as: every day, every week, every Monday, etc.),

She usually plays tennis at the weekend.



- ◆ permanent states,
He works in an office.



- ◆ general truths or laws of nature.

The sun sets in the west.



Time Expressions

Time expressions used with the present simple are:

every day/week/month/year, usually, always, etc.
every morning/afternoon/evening/night,
in the morning/afternoon/evening, at night,
on Mondays/Tuesdays, etc.

2

Write the third person singular of the verbs in the correct box, then read them out.

laugh, look, miss, stand, speak, drink, put, catch, drive, brush, ride, walk, open, jump, stay, know, cough, see, dance, rise, help, listen, match, wish, travel, write, lose, eat, rain, arrange

/s/ *laughs,*

/ɪz/ *misses,*

/z/ *stands,*

3

Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple.

- 1 I*play*.... (play) football with my friends on Sundays.
- 2 Tina (walk) to school every day.
- 3 We (go) to bed at 10 o'clock every night.
- 4 Penguins (live) in the Antarctic.
- 5 Tony (study) Maths at university.
- 6 Jo and Peter (visit) their grandparents every week.
- 7 Sally (speak) Spanish.
- 8 Mike (do) his homework every evening.
- 9 Susan (wash) her hair every day.
- 10 Water (boil) at 100° Celsius.

4

Form questions using the prompts below, as in the example.

- 1 John's father drives fast. (your brother)
Does your brother drive fast, too?
- 2 Tom plays the guitar every day. (Peter)
- 3 Sarah goes shopping on Mondays. (Anna and Mary)
- 4 Fiona likes video games. (Lucy)
- 5 Mother watches TV in the afternoon. (the children)

5

Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple.



This restaurant is called "Vienna". Ten people 1) *...work...* (work) here. Julia Thomas is the owner. She 2) (go) to the restaurant at four o'clock in the afternoon. The waiters 3) (arrive) at half past four. They

4) (set) the tables and 5) (tidy) the kitchen. The chef, Pièrre Rousseau, 6) (come) at five o'clock. He 7) (prepare) the food for the evening. The restaurant 8) (open) at six o'clock. Many people 9) (eat) here because the food is very good. The restaurant 10) (close) at one o'clock in the morning, and at half past one Julia, the chef and the waiters 11) (go) home.

Short Answers

In short answers we only use Yes or No, the subject pronoun (I, you, he, etc.) and the auxiliary verb *do/don't* or *does/doesn't*. We do not repeat the main verb.

Do you ...?	Yes, I/we do. No, I/we don't.
Does he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it does. No, he/she/it doesn't.
Do they ...?	Yes, they do. No, they don't.

6

Imagine you are interviewing Julia Thomas. In pairs, ask and answer questions as in the examples.

- you / go to the restaurant / at four o'clock?
SA: *Do you go to the restaurant at four o'clock?*
SB: *Yes, I do.*

- the waiters / arrive / at four o'clock?
SA: *Do the waiters arrive at four o'clock?*
SB: *No, they don't. They arrive at half past four.*
- you / set the tables?
- the waiters / tidy the kitchen?
- the chef / come / at half past four?
- he / prepare the food?
- the restaurant / open / at seven o'clock?
- many people / eat here?
- the restaurant / close / at one o'clock?

Adverbs of Frequency

We use adverbs of frequency with the present simple. They show us how often something happens and include the following:

never	often
seldom/rarely	usually
sometimes	always

Adverbs of frequency go before the main verb in simple tenses (work, drink, etc.).

- e.g. *I usually work on Saturdays.*
They never drink coffee.

But they go after the verb to be in simple tenses.

- e.g. *It is often cold in winter.*
He is always late for work.

Adverbs of frequency go after auxiliary verbs (can, do, etc.).

- e.g. *He can never wake up before 10 o'clock.*

7

Put the adverbs in the correct place, as in the example.

- I drink a glass of milk in the morning. (always)
...I always drink a glass of milk in the morning...
- Kate goes to bed late at night. (never)
- My mother watches TV. (rarely)
- You can see clouds in the sky. (sometimes)
- Ben eats in a restaurant. (seldom)
- Joanne doesn't get up early. (usually)
- They are late for school. (often)

UNIT 9

Present Simple

8

In pairs, ask questions to find out how often your partner does these things. Then, use his/her answers to report to the rest of the class.

e.g. SA: *How often do you help with the housework?*
 SB: *I seldom help with the housework.*

How often do you...	Never	Seldom	Often	Always
a) help with the housework?				
b) watch TV in the evenings?				
c) play computer games in your free time?				
d) go to the cinema at the weekends?				
e) wake up at 6.30?				
f) go to parties?				
g) eat Chinese food?				

e.g. *Anna seldom helps with the housework but she often watches TV in the evenings...*

Note: When there is an adverb of frequency in a question or a negation, we follow the same rules as on page 49.

e.g. *They often go to the cinema. (before the main verb)*
Do they often go to the cinema?
 (NOT: ~~Do often they go...~~)
They don't often go to the cinema.
 (NOT: ~~They do often not go...~~)

9

Write questions and negations as in the example.

- Simon likes tea.
 ...*Does Simon like tea?*...
 ...*Simon doesn't like tea...*
- We often play basketball on Saturdays.

- Bill drives to work every day.

- Our dog likes biscuits.

- They live in France.

- Samantha works in a supermarket.

- Paul and Mary often go to the gym.

- David always gets up at 8 o'clock.

- Miss Jones teaches Maths.

- Sue and Jill usually wear jeans.

10

Match the questions with the answers.

- What's your job?
 - Do you take the bus to work every day?
 - What time do you start work?
 - Do you enjoy your job?
 - What do you do in the evening?
 - How often do you go to the cinema?
 - Do you like comedies and romantic films?
 - Do you live in a house or a flat?
 - Do your parents live near you?
 - Where do you keep your clothes?
-
- I usually go out.
 - I am a nurse.1....
 - No, they don't.
 - Some of them.
 - At half past seven.
 - In my wardrobe.
 - About once a month.
 - In a flat.
 - No, I usually walk to work.
 - Yes, I do.

Present Simple versus Present Continuous

◆ The present simple expresses a permanent state or an action which is repeated.



David **works** for a big company.
He **works** from 9 to 5 every day.

◆ The present continuous expresses a temporary situation, that is, an action happening at or around the moment of speaking.



David **isn't working** at the moment.
He **is** at a restaurant.
He **is having** dinner with his wife.

11

Today is a holiday. Look at the pictures and write what George does every day and what he is doing today, as in the example.



(usually/get up)

(today/still/sleep)

...He usually gets up at 7.30 every day, but today he is still sleeping....



(usually/have breakfast)

(today/read the newspaper)

.....



(usually/drive to work)

(today/work in the garden)

.....



(usually/eat dinner at home)

(today/eat at a restaurant)

.....

UNIT 9

Present Simple

Non Continuous Verbs

Some verbs do not have continuous tenses (e.g. present continuous). These include:

believe, belong, forget, hate, hear, know,
like, love, need, remember, smell, see, think,
understand, want, etc.

e.g. I **need** a pencil. (NOT: ~~I'm needing a pencil.~~)

The verb *have (got)* is not used in continuous tenses when it means *possess*.

e.g. I've **got** a pet. (NOT: ~~I'm having a pet.~~)

However, we can use *have* in continuous tenses with the following expressions: *have breakfast/lunch/dinner* (=eat breakfast/lunch/dinner), *have a bath/shower* (=be in the bath/shower), *have a party* (=give a party), *have fun* (=enjoy oneself), *have a good/nice/bad time* (=enjoy or not enjoy oneself), etc.

e.g. He **has lunch** at two o'clock every day. (present simple)

He's **having lunch** now. (present continuous)

She **has a bath** every morning. (present simple)

She's **having a bath** at the moment. (present continuous)

12 Put the verbs into the present continuous or the present simple.

- 1 "Where's Sally?" "She ...**is speaking**... (speak) to Paul."
- 2 What time (you/go) to school?
- 3 "Steve is in the bathroom." " (he/have) a shower?"
- 4 That villa (belong) to a rich businessman.
- 5 She (like) listening to music. She (have) a lot of cassettes.
- 6 You can turn off the television. I (not/watch) it.
- 7 I have a motorbike but I (not/usually/ride) it to work.
- 8 (you/want) to come to Julie's party with me?
- 9 Please be quiet. I (try) to do my homework.

- 10 Drive carefully. It (rain)
- 11 He (need) to buy a new pair of shoes
- 12 Sarah never (forget) people's names

13 Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple or continuous.



Dear Donna,

I 1) ...'**m writing**... (write) to you from the Golden Beach Hotel. I am here with Sandy and Pat. The hotel 2) (belong) to Pat's uncle and she 3) (spend) every summer here.

The place is very nice and I 4) (think) all the people at the hotel 5) (have) a nice time. We 6) (swim) and 7) (go) windsurfing every morning. At noon we 8) (have) lunch and in the evening we 9) (go) for walks.

Today it 10) (rain) so we can't go out. I 11) (hate) this weather! At the moment Sandy and Pat 12) (have) lunch. They 13) (eat) fish today and it 14) (smell) very good.

15) (you/have) a good time at home? Write soon and tell me all your news.

Love,
Jessy

14 Underline the correct time expression.

- Karen usually cooks dinner in the evening/*now*.
- It isn't snowing at the moment/*at the weekend*.
- Are they having a piano lesson every Monday/*now*?
- Do you go out at present/*at the weekend*?
- She seldom/*at the moment* visits her grandparents.
- Paul is repairing his bike on Mondays/*at the moment*.
- They're running to catch the bus now/*at night*.
- Kim and John go to the cinema on Fridays/*today*.

15 Choose the correct answer.

- Alice ...C... like French films.
A isn't B don't C doesn't
- you doing your homework?
A Do B Are C Is
- My friend and I TV on Saturday afternoons.
A watch B watches C watching
- they having a lesson at the moment?
A Are B Is C Do
- We usually out on Sundays.
A eating B eat C eats
- tigers live in the jungle?
A Are B Do C Is
- She everybody in her school.
A know B is knowing C knows

16 Correct the mistakes.

- He don't speak English.
- He is swimming every morning.
- Does you work in a bank?
- I have dinner now.
- Mark walk to school every day.
- Kate is liking pizza.
- The sun is rising in the east.
- Susan and Jo lives in New York.
- We are needing some sugar.

ORAL Activity

Work in pairs. Student A asks questions and Student B answers them, as in the example. Then, change roles.

	Yes	No	Notes
1 live / in London?		✓	Rome
2 go / to school?	✓		
3 like / Maths?			
4 speak / French?			
5 play / the piano?			
6 play / football?			
7 read / books?			
8 watch TV / in the afternoon?			
9 listen / to pop music?			
10 often/ go / to the park?			
11 swim / in summer?			

e.g. SA: Do you live in London?
SB: No, I don't. I live in Rome.
SA: Do you go to school?
SB: Yes, I do.

WRITING Activity

Now, using your notes from the Oral Activity, write about your partner.

How well do you know your partner?

I know my partner really well. He lives in Rome and he goes to school. He doesn't like Maths but he likes History.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

UNIT 10

A lot of - Much - Many / (A) little - (A) few

A Lot of - Much - Many



Is there **much** ham on the plate?
No, there isn't **much**. There are only three slices.



Has she got **many** friends?
Yes, she's got **a lot of** friends.



Are there **many** people in the swimming pool?
No, there aren't **many**. There are only two.

- ◆ We use **a lot of/lots of** with plural countable nouns (e.g. books, cars, etc.) and uncountable nouns (e.g. sugar, milk, etc.) in positive statements.

e.g. She's got **a lot of/lots of** books.
There's **a lot of** milk in the fridge.

Note: We omit **of** when **a lot** is not followed by a noun.

e.g. Are there **many** people in the room? Yes, there are **a lot**.

- ◆ We normally use **much** with uncountable nouns in questions and negations.

e.g. How **much** money have you got?
There isn't **much** sugar in the bowl.

- ◆ We normally use **many** with plural countable nouns in questions and negations.

e.g. Are there **many** books on the shelf? There aren't **many** books on the shelf.

- ◆ In questions we use **how much** to ask about the amount of something and **how many** to ask about the number of things.

How much + uncountable noun How many + countable noun

e.g. **How much sugar** do we need? A kilo. (We want to know the amount.)
How many boys are there in your class? Twenty. (We want to know the number.)

	Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
Countable nouns	a lot (of) lots of	(how) many	many
Uncountable nouns	a lot (of)	(how) much	much

1 In pairs, ask and answer questions as in the example.

e.g. SA: **How much honey** is there? SB: **Not much.**
SA: **How many cassettes** are there? SB: **Not many.**

honey, cassettes, teachers, eggs, water, students, tea, meat, boys, milk, apples, sheep, women, salt, paper, money, letters, books, records, pepper, wine, pens

A lot of - Much - Many / (A) little - (A) few

2 Fill in many, much or a lot of.

- 1 There is ...*a lot of*... milk in the carton.
- 2 Are there people at the cinema today?
- 3 He has got money.
- 4 There isn't sugar in this coffee.
- 5 Is there orange juice in the jug?
- 6 She has got books in her bag.
- 7 Have you got friends?
- 8 There aren't biscuits in the packet.
- 9 We haven't got bread.
- 10 There are animals in the zoo.
- 11 Are there shops in this street?
- 12 There isn't pepper in the soup.
- 13 The children have got toys.
- 14 Is there tea in the cup?
- 15 She has got rings.

3 Write questions and answers as in the examples.



- 1 Are there many strawberries?
Yes, there are *a lot*.
- 2 Are there many carrots?
No, there aren't many.
- 3
- 4

- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10

4 Fill in the gaps with much, many or a lot of and one of the words from the list.

shops, friends, giraffes, money, snow, time, suitcases, rice

- 1 This sweater doesn't cost ...*much money*...
- 2 Maria is very popular. She has
- 3 Do you spend studying for exams?
- 4 How are there in the zoo?
- 5 I haven't got with me.
- 6 There isn't in the cupboard.
- 7 This shopping centre is very big. There are
- 8 There is outside. Let's build a snowman.

5 Match the questions with the answers.

- | | |
|---|------------------|
| 1 Do you eat many hamburgers? | ... <i>b</i> ... |
| 2 Have you got many computer games? | ..... |
| 3 How many pets have you got? | ..... |
| 4 How much is this T-shirt? | ..... |
| 5 How much time do you spend doing your homework? | ..... |
- a Two; a dog and a cat.
b No, not many.
c Not much, about two hours every day.
d No, I haven't got any.
e £15.

6 Answer the questions with a lot, much or many.

- 1 Have you got any stamps?
Yes, ...*a lot*...
- 2 Is there any bread in the cupboard?
No, not
- 3 Have you got any biscuits?
No, not
- 4 Have you got any video tapes?
Yes,
- 5 How many apples do we need for the cake?
Not
- 6 How much money do you need for the weekend?
Not

A Little/Little - A Few/Few



Carol has got **a little** flour. She can make a cake.



Jill has got **(very) little** flour. She can't make a cake.



Carol has got **a few** strawberries. She can make some jam.



Jill has got **(very) few** strawberries. She can't make any jam.

◆ We use **a little/little** with uncountable nouns (e.g. water, money, rice, etc.).

A little means "not much but enough". e.g. I've got **a little** money. I can buy some bread.

Little means "hardly any, almost nothing" and can go with **very** for emphasis.

e.g. They've got **(very) little** money. They can't buy any bread.

◆ We use **a few/few** with plural countable nouns. (e.g. tomatoes, books, cups, etc.).

A few means "not many but enough". e.g. There are **a few** tomatoes. We can make a salad.

Few means "hardly any, almost none" and can go with **very** for emphasis.

e.g. There are **(very) few** people in the cinema. It is almost empty.

7 Use a few or a little for each of the nouns in the list.

e.g. **a few** chairs **a little** water

chairs, water, tea, books, chocolate, bread, men, deer, jam, glasses, honey, knives, children, Coke, butter, lemonade, salt, desks, hats, pepper

8 Fill in very few, a few, very little or a little.

- We've got **....very few....** eggs. We can't make an omelette.
- Sue's got money. She can buy a new dress.
- I've got apples. I can make an apple pie.
- There are people in the park today because it's raining.

- There's milk in the fridge. Go to the supermarket and buy some, please.
- There's lemonade in the jug. Would you like some?

9 Answer the questions with a little or a few as in the example.

- "Do you want some biscuits?"
"Yes, **....a few....**"
- "Have you got any toothpaste?"
"Yes,"
- "Were there any people at the meeting?"
"Yes,"
- "Do you want some cake?"
"Yes,"
- "Are there any car parks near here?"
"Yes,"
- "Have you got any bread?"
"Yes,"

A lot of - Much - Many / (A) little - (A) few

10 Choose the correct answer.

- 1 I eat ...C... meat. I prefer fish.
A very few B a few C very little
- 2 "Has he got many friends?" "Yes,"
A a little B a lot C much
- 3 I've got free time now!
A very little B very few C few
- 4 Very people can speak Welsh.
A few B little C a lot
- 5 She doesn't eat sweets because she is on a diet.
A a lot B many C much
- 6 There are pencils in the drawer. Take one.
A a lot B a few C a little
- 7 You haven't got flowers in your garden this year.
A much B a lot C many
- 8 Put chocolate in the cake.
A a little B a few C few
- 9 Jack has got comics. He buys one every week.
A a lot of B a lot C few
- 10 There is shampoo. Can you buy some at the supermarket?
A very few B a lot of C very little
- 11 He hasn't got money.
A many B much C a lot
- 12 He's got sweets in his pocket.
A little B a few C a little

11 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 There is very few soup in the bowl.
- 2 How much carrots are there in the fridge?
- 3 Rita has got many money.
- 4 There are a little people in the shop.
- 5 Mike hasn't got much friends.
- 6 There is few snow on the mountains.
- 7 How much deer can you see in the picture?
- 8 I have got little CDs but a lot of cassettes.
- 9 There are much animals in the zoo.
- 10 How many sugar is there in the bowl?

ORAL Activity

Look at the table. In pairs, ask and answer questions as in the examples. Use *how much*, *how many*, *a little/very little*, *a lot* and *a few/very few*.

SA: *How much butter is there?*

SB: *There is a lot.*



Now say what there is on the table.

e.g. There is a lot of butter but there is very little bread.

WRITING Activity

Now, write about what there is on the table.

e.g. There is a lot of butter on the table. There is ..

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Revision 2 (Units 1 - 10)

1 Replace each word in bold with a subject or object pronoun.

- 1 Fiona likes **cats**. ...*She likes them*....
- 2 **Peter** is repairing **the TV**.
- 3 Eat **your breakfast!**
- 4 Is **Emma** reading **the newspaper?**
- 5 **The children** are playing with **the ball**.
- 6 Don't touch **the wires!**
- 7 **Mother** is talking to **Simon**.
- 8 Are **Peter and Tim** listening to **the radio?**

2 Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs from the list. Which sentences need Don't? Which need Let's? Which only need the verb?

write - talk - go - play - have - wash - turn on - sit

- 1 ...*Let's go*... to the theatre tonight.
- 2 your hands! They're very dirty.
- 3 on that chair! It's broken.
- 4 your name on the envelope.
- 5 some biscuits. They're delicious.
- 6 the lights, please.
- 7 with your mouth full! It's rude.
- 8 cards tonight.

3 Fill in the gaps with some, any, no, somebody, something, somewhere, anybody, anything or nobody.

- 1 I'm thirsty. Can I have ...*some*... water, please?
- 2 is calling your name. Is it your brother?
- 3 Thank you very much. I don't need else.
- 4 It's raining hard. There aren't people in the streets.
- 5 knows the answer to this question. It's very difficult.
- 6 Would you like milk with your tea?
- 7 I can't find my glasses, but I know they're in this room.
- 8 Have you got French dictionaries?
- 9 There is water in my glass. It's empty.
- 10 I want to tell you but please don't tell

4 Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple or present continuous.

- 1 The twins ...*are watching*... (watch) TV at the moment.
- 2 Simon usually (spend) the weekends at home.
- 3 Why (you/cry)? Is anything wrong?
- 4 Tim (study) hard these days. He wants to pass his exams.
- 5 How often (Helen/go) shopping?
- 6 I'm sorry, but I (not/remember) your name.
- 7 Our neighbours (have) a party and they (make) a lot of noise.
- 8 This new perfume (smell) very nice.
- 9 Fiona (stay) with her aunt at present, but she (want) to move somewhere else soon.
- 10 I (think) you're right. I must get a job soon.

5 Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple or present continuous.



- A: 1) ..*Do you know*.. (you/know) whose villa that is?
 B: Yes. It 2) (belong) to Paul Richards, the famous director.
 A: 3) (he/be) at home now?
 B: I 4) (not/think) so. He 5) (make) a new film in Mexico at the moment. Look! There's his wife. She 6) (get) into her car now.
 A: She's beautiful! What 7) (those people/do) over there?
 B: They 8) (clean) the swimming pool. They usually 9) (come) every Thursday at about 9.30 in the morning. Paul Richards is a very polite and friendly man and he often 10) (let) my children play in the pool when he is here.
 A: He sounds like a great neighbour. Lucky you!

6 Fill in (very) little, a little, (very) few or a few.

- 1 I'm going shopping. I need to buy ...*a few*... things for tonight's party.
- 2 people swim in the sea in the winter.
- 3 I can't wait for you. I've got time.
- 4 There is snow on the ground. The children can't make a snowman.
- 5 He knows people. They can help him find a job.
- 6 We need milk and eggs to make the cake.
- 7 I have free time for hobbies because I work a lot.

7 Underline the correct word(s).



Dear Alice,

Thanks 1) *a lot/much* for your letter. I am very happy to be your pen-pal. I have 2) *a little/a few* things to tell you about myself.

I live with my parents and my dog, Scottie. I haven't got any brothers or sisters. I go to a big school. There are 3) *a lot of/a little* students in my class and I have 4) *very little/a lot of* friends. I haven't got very 5) *much/little* free time so I have 6) *a lot of/few* hobbies. On Saturdays I go to the cinema with my friends. I also like to go shopping. There are 7) *little/a lot of* shops in my town. I have 8) *little/very few* money to spend, but I like looking at the things in the shops!

Please write to me soon and tell me 9) *a little/little* about yourself.

Best wishes,
Sophie

8 Choose the correct answer.

- 1 I ...*A*... to school every day.
A go B am going C goes
- 2 Uncle Tom a lot of people in our town.
A is knowing B know C knows
- 3 your coat on. It's cold outside.
A Put B Puts C Don't put
- 4 There aren't flowers in the garden.
A some B any C no
- 5 Have you got money in the bank?
A few B many C much
- 6 Susan often letters.
A writes B write C is writing
- 7 There aren't good hotels in this town.
A much B a lot C many
- 8 Don't in class.
A talks B talking C talk
- 9 Billy Don't make any noise.
A is sleeping B sleep C sleeps
- 10 We can't go tonight. It is snowing.
A anywhere B somewhere C nowhere

9 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 I want nothing nice to eat.
- 2 I am going swimming every week.
- 3 The bus stops anywhere near the park.
- 4 Let's to go shopping!
- 5 How much oranges are there in the bowl?
- 6 He washes the dog at the moment.
- 7 He's got very few bread.
- 8 Can I have a little strawberries, please?
- 9 They are very clevers girls.
- 10 We has got a new car.
- 11 There are a few lion in the zoo.
- 12 Peter always do his homework.
- 13 Go you to bed now!
- 14 There isn't some sugar in my coffee.

UNIT 11

Past Simple (Was/Were - Had)

Was/Were



Bob is eighty. He's old and weak.
Mary, his wife is seventy-nine. She's old too.



Fifty years ago they were young. Bob was strong. He wasn't weak. Mary was beautiful. She wasn't old.

- ◆ The past simple of the verb "to be" is **was** for **I, he, she, it** and **were** for **we, you, they**. We form questions by putting **was/were** before the subject pronoun (I, you, he, etc.). e.g. *She was ill yesterday.* → *Was she ill yesterday?*
We form negations by putting **not** after was/were. e.g. *She was not ill yesterday.* / *She wasn't ill yesterday.*

Affirmative		Negative		Interrogative
		Long form	Short form	
I was	You were	I was not	I wasn't	Was I?
He was	She was	You were not	You weren't	Were you?
It was	We were	He was not	He wasn't	Was he?
You were	You were	She was not	She wasn't	Was she?
They were	They were	It was not	It wasn't	Was it?
		We were not	We weren't	Were we?
		You were not	You weren't	Were you?
		They were not	They weren't	Were they?

1 Fill in the short forms as in the example.

Long Form	Short Form.
1 He was not in Paris.	He ..wasn't.. in Paris.
2 They were not at home.	They at home.
3 Tom was not at school.	Tom at school.
4 The girls were not with us.	The girls with us.
5 Sophia was not in the park.	Sophia in the park.

2 In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below, as in the example.

SA: *Where were you at 8 o'clock yesterday?*
SB: *I was at the cinema.*

- you / cinema
- Helen / park
- Tom and Mary / theatre
- Mr Miller / work
- Doris / home
- you and the boys / supermarket

Past Simple (Was/Were

Use

We use the past simple for actions which finished at a definite stated time in the past. That is, we know when the action happened.



They **were** in Berlin last month.
(When? Last month.)



He **was** in hospital two weeks ago.
(When? Two weeks ago.)

Time Expressions

Time expressions used with the past simple include:

yesterday, last week, last month, last year, two days/ weeks/months/ years ago, in 1975, etc.

3 Fill in the gaps with *am, is, are, was or were*.

- 1 I ... *am* ... cold. Please, close the windows.
- 2 Tom and Jean in Spain last week.
- 3 Sarah ten years old in 1995.
- 4 George tired. He is going to bed now.
- 5 I a secretary. I work in a big office.
- 6 Tom at Peter's house yesterday.
- 7 Mum and Dad at home last night.
- 8 Terry my friend. He lives next door.
- 9 Alison and Kate late for school yesterday.
- 10 the cameramen at the studio now?

Short Answers

In short answers we only use Yes or No, the personal pronoun and the verb form *was/wasn't* or *were/weren't*. We do not repeat the whole question.

e.g. *Were you late yesterday?* Yes, I was/No, I wasn't.

Were you ...?	Yes, I was/we were.
	No, I wasn't/we weren't.
Was he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it was.
	No, he/she/it wasn't.
Were they ...?	Yes, they were.
	No, they weren't.

Note: We use the past simple to talk about people who are no longer alive.

4 Fill in *was, wasn't, were or weren't*.

- 1 "... *Was*... Marilyn Monroe a famous actress?" "Yes, she ... *was*..."
- 2 "..... Alfred Hitchcock an actor?" "No, he He a famous director."
- 3 "..... Beethoven, Mozart and Chopin directors? No, they" "They composers."
- 4 "..... Thomas Edison a singer?" "No, he" "He an inventor."
- 5 "..... Abraham Lincoln and George Washington presidents of the USA?" "Yes, they"

5 Put the words in the correct order to make questions. Then, match the questions to the answers.

- 1 was / with / you / who?
 - 2 the meeting / at/ were / people / how many?
 - 3 you / were / sad / why?
 - 4 last night / you / at / home / were?
 - 5 open / was / shop / the?
 - 6 were / much / tickets / the / how?
- a No, it was closed.
 b Forty-five.
 c £20.
 d Because I was alone.
 e No, I was out.
 f ... *Who was with you?* ... Aunt Mary.

UNIT 11

Past Simple (Was/Were - Had)

There was/There were

This is a modern town today.

There are a lot of tall buildings and shops. **There are** cars and **there isn't** much peace and quiet.



This is the same town fifty years ago.

There weren't any tall buildings. **There were** some old houses. **There weren't** many cars and **there wasn't** much noise.



◆ **There was/There were** is the past simple form of **There is/There are**.

We use **there was** in the singular. e.g. **There was** a post office in the street thirty years ago.

We use **there were** in the plural. e.g. **There were** a few houses in the street thirty years ago.

We put **was/were** before **there** to form questions. e.g. **Was there** a post office in the street thirty years ago? **Were there** any houses in the street thirty years ago?

We form negations by putting **not** after **was/were**. e.g. **There was not/wasn't** a post office in the street thirty years ago. **There were not/weren't** any houses in the street thirty years ago.

Affirmative	Negative		Interrogative
	Long form	Short form	
There was There were	There was not There were not	There wasn't There weren't	Was there? Were there?

Short Answers

◆ In short answers we only use **Yes** or **No** and **there was/were**. We do not repeat the whole question.

Was there a book on the desk?	Yes, there was. No, there wasn't.
Were there any people in the shop?	Yes, there were. No, there weren't.

6

In pairs, look at the objects and ask and answer questions as in the example.

SA: *Were there bicycles a hundred years ago?*

SB: *Yes, there were.*



Had

Grandpa, **did** you **have** a TV when you were five?



No, I **didn't**. People **didn't have** TV's then. They **had** radios.

- ◆ The past simple of the verb **have (got)** is **had**. It is the same in all persons. We form questions with the auxiliary verb **did**, the subject pronoun and the verb **have**. e.g. *Did you have many toys when you were a child?* We form negations with **did not** and **have**. e.g. *I did not/didn't have many toys when I was a child.*

Affirmative	Negative		Interrogative
	Long form	Short form	
I had	I did not have	I didn't have	Did I have?
You had	You did not have	You didn't have	Did you have?
He had	He did not have	He didn't have	Did he have?
She had	She did not have	She didn't have	Did she have?
It had	It did not have	It didn't have	Did it have?
We had	We did not have	We didn't have	Did we have?
You had	You did not have	You didn't have	Did you have?
They had	They did not have	They didn't have	Did they have?

7 Fill in the short forms as in the example.

Long Form	Short Form
1 He did not have any money.	He ..didn't have.. any money.
2 They did not have lunch.	They lunch.
3 She did not have many books.	She many books.
4 Tina did not have any friends.	Tina any friends.

8 Fill in the gaps with **had** or **did ... have**.

- 1 **..Did..** you **..have..** a lesson last night?
- 2 Ben toothache yesterday.
- 3 They not a good time at the dance.
- 4 Mr and Mrs Newton a big party last night.
- 5 She not many sandwiches for lunch.
- 6 you a dog when you were a child?

Past Simple (Was/Were

13 Fill in the gaps with was, were or have.



ORAL Activity

Look at the two pictures below. Picture A shows the town of Barton as it is now and picture B shows Barton as it was many years ago. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below as in the examples.

e.g. SA: Was Barton different many years ago?
 SB: Yes, it was.
 SA: Were there any tall buildings?
 SB: No, there weren't.

different - tall buildings - houses - cars - shops - wide streets - trees - crowded



WRITING Activity

Now, using the pictures and your notes from the Oral Activity complete the text about Barton.

This is Barton. It 1) a modern town. In the main street there 2) lots of tall buildings. The road 3) very busy because it is in a big shopping area. There 4) lots of cars, buses and people, but there 5) any trees. Fifty years ago Barton was very different. There weren't any

.....

.....

.....

UNIT 12

Past Simple (Regular/Irregular Verbs)



Julie and her daughter **didn't stay** at home last weekend. They **went** to a friend's house in the mountains. They **played** in the snow and **had** a lot of fun.

- ◆ We form the past simple of **regular verbs** by adding **-ed** to the main verb. e.g. He **played** football yesterday. We form questions with the auxiliary verb **did**, the subject pronoun and the main verb without **-ed**. e.g. **Did** he **play** football yesterday? We form negations with **did not/didn't** and the main verb without **-ed**. e.g. He **did not /didn't play** football yesterday.

Affirmative	Negative		Interrogative
	Long form	Short form	
I worked	I did not work	I didn't work	Did I work?
You worked	You did not work	You didn't work	Did you work?
He worked	He did not work	He didn't work	Did he work?
She worked	She did not work	She didn't work	Did she work?
It worked	It did not work	It didn't work	Did it work?
We worked	We did not work	We didn't work	Did we work?
You worked	You did not work	You didn't work	Did you work?
They worked	They did not work	They didn't work	Did they work?

Spelling Rules

- ◆ Verbs ending in **-e** take only **-d**. *like - liked*
- ◆ Verbs ending in a **consonant + y**, drop the **y** and take **-ied**. *study - studied*
But, verbs ending in a **vowel + y**, take **-ed**. *play - played, stay - stayed*
- ◆ Verbs ending in one **stressed vowel** between two consonants double the last consonant and take **-ed**. *stop - stopped*
BUT *visit - visited*
- ◆ Verbs ending in one **l**, double the **l** and take **-ed**. *travel - travelled, quarrel - quarrelled*

1 Write the past simple of the verbs in the correct box.

laugh, tidy, travel, stay, plan, hate, cry, rob, pull, love, study, dance, kiss, drop, change, enjoy, try, live, prefer, cook, hurry

- ed	- d
laughed	
- ied	double consonant + ed

Past Simple (Regular/Irregular Verbs)

Pronunciation

The suffix **-ed** is pronounced:

- ◆ / **ɪd** / when the verb ends in a / t / or / d / sound.
wanted, mended
- ◆ / **t** / when the verb ends in a / k /, / s /, / tʃ /, / ʃ /, / f / or / p / sound.
liked, missed, watched, washed, laughed, stopped
- ◆ / **d** / when the verb ends in any other sound.
closed, studied, loved, robbed

2

Write the past simple of the verbs in the correct box, then read them out.

start, open, wish, look, wait, jump, carry, visit, cook, clean, end, finish, add, live, match, count, laugh, pray, kiss, type, decide, change

/ɪd/	<i>started,</i>
/t/	
/d/	

◆ **Irregular verbs** do not form the past simple by adding **-ed**. e.g. *go-went, see-saw, drink-drank* (See list of irregular verbs at the end of the book). They form questions and negations with **did/did not (didn't)** and the root form of the verb. e.g. *He went out - Did he go out? - He didn't go out.*

Affirmative	Negative		Interrogative
	Long form	Short form	
I went	I did not go	I didn't go	Did I go?
You went	You did not go	You didn't go	Did you go?
He went	He did not go	He didn't go	Did he go?
She went	She did not go	She didn't go	Did she go?
It went	It did not go	It didn't go	Did it go?
We went	We did not go	We didn't go	Did we go?
You went	You did not go	You didn't go	Did you go?
They went	They did not go	They didn't go	Did they go?

3

Write the past simple of the verbs.

- | | | | |
|---------|--------------------|----------|-------|
| 1 run | ... <i>ran</i> ... | 12 take | ..... |
| 2 make | ..... | 13 drive | ..... |
| 3 break | ..... | 14 steal | ..... |
| 4 read | ..... | 15 write | ..... |
| 5 see | ..... | 16 wake | ..... |
| 6 drink | ..... | 17 bring | ..... |
| 7 feed | ..... | 18 leave | ..... |
| 8 eat | ..... | 19 sleep | ..... |
| 9 come | ..... | 20 swim | ..... |
| 10 find | ..... | 21 know | ..... |
| 11 say | ..... | 22 give | ..... |

4

In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below as in the example.

SA: *Mary went somewhere yesterday.*
SB: *Did she go to the theatre?*

- 1 Mary / go / somewhere yesterday (theatre)
- 2 John / meet / somebody yesterday (his boss)
- 3 Father / repair / something yesterday (the car)
- 4 They / visit / somebody yesterday (the Browns)
- 5 Sheila / buy / something yesterday (a dress)
- 6 Tom / talk to / somebody yesterday (Ben)
- 7 They / bring / something yesterday (a cake)

UNIT 12

Past Simple (Regular/Irregular Verbs)

Use

We use the past simple:

- ◆ for actions which happened at a definite stated time in the past, that is, we know **when** they happened.

They got married 15 years ago. (When did they get married? 15 years ago.)



- ◆ for repeated actions which happened in the past but don't happen any more. In this case we can use adverbs of frequency (e.g. always, often, usually, etc.).

My father often took me to the playground when I was little.



- ◆ for actions which happened one after the other in the past.



First, they had lunch.



Then, they met some friends.

Time Expressions

Other time expressions used with past simple apart from those on page 61 include: *last Monday/ Tuesday etc., then, when*

5

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the past simple.

- "...*Did you go*... to school yesterday?"
"No, it was Sunday." (you/go)
- He an interesting book last month. (read)
- I looked for my keys but I them. (not/find)
- I wasn't hungry so I anything. (not/eat)
- "..... to Fred yesterday?"
"Yes, I phoned him." (you/speak)
- "..... the bell?" "Yes, but nobody answered." (you/ring)
- "What was that noise?" "I..... anything." (not/hear)
- "What for breakfast?"
"Bacon and eggs." (they/have)
- "How many books ?"
"Only one." (you/buy)
- He his presents on Christmas morning. (open)
- I my clothes on Sunday afternoon. (wash)

6

First, put the verbs in brackets in the past simple, then match the beginnings of the sentences to their endings.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 John ... <i>was</i> ... (be) tired, so | a he (go) to the dentist. |
| 2 Peter (need) some money, so | b he (call) the police. |
| 3 Anna (not/like) the film, so | c I (take) an aspirin. |
| 4 Sophia and Mary (miss) the bus, so | d she (shout) at them. |
| 5 Somebody (steal) Mr Jones' car, so | e he (go) to the bank. |
| 6 The children (break) their mother's watch, so | f he ... <i>went</i> ... (go) to bed early. |
| 7 I (not/feel) well, so | g they (take) a taxi. |
| 8 Mike (have) toothache, so | h she (leave) the cinema. |

- | | | | |
|--------------------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1 ... <i>f</i> ... | 3 | 5 | 7 |
| 2 | 4 | 6 | 8 |

Short Answers

In short answers we only use **Yes** or **No**, the subject pronoun and the auxiliary verb *did/didn't*. We do not repeat the whole question.

e.g. *Did you go to the cinema?* Yes, I did. No, I didn't.

Did you ...?	Yes, I/we did.	No, I/we didn't.
Did he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it did.	No, he/she/it didn't.
Did they ...?	Yes, they did.	No, they didn't.

7 Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple.



Last Sunday the Carter family **1) ...went...** (go) camping in the countryside. They **2)** (find) a nice place by a river. Mr Carter **3)** (put up) the tent. After that they **4)** (eat) some sandwiches and cakes. Then, Mr Carter **5)** (show) Sam and Pamela how to fish. Mrs Carter **6)** (pick) some flowers, and their dog Champ **7)** (swim) in the river. They all **8)** (have) a very good time.

8 Read the text in ex. 7 again and in pairs, ask and answer questions as in the example.

- the Carter family / go shopping?
SA: *Did the Carter family go shopping?*
SB: *No, they didn't. They went camping.*
- they / find / a nice place for their tent?
- Mrs Carter / put up / the tent?
- they / eat / hamburgers and biscuits?
- Mr Carter / show the children / how to fish?
- Mrs Carter / swim in the river?
- they / have a good time?

9

Anna's mother left a list of things for Anna to do. Now she is talking to Anna on the phone. Look at the list and fill in the gaps with the correct verb in the past simple. Give short answers.

go to the supermarket	✓
post the letters	x
go to the baker's	x
feed Blacky	✓
take him for a walk	✓
make the beds	✓
water the plants	x
wash the dishes	✓

- Mother: Hello, Anna.
Anna: Hi, Mum.
Mother: Did you do the things I asked you to do?
Anna: I did some of them but not all of them.
Mother: So, **1) ...did you go...** to the supermarket?
Anna: **2)**, but I **3)** to the baker's.
Mother: That's all right. **4)** the letters?
Anna: **5)**
Mother: **6)** the beds?
Anna: **7)**, and I also **8)** the dishes.
Mother: Good! What about the dog?
Anna: I **9)** Blacky and then I **10)** him for a walk.
Mother: **11)** the plants?
Anna: **12)**
Mother: It doesn't matter. I'm glad you did all those things.
Anna: To tell you the truth Mum, Grandma came and helped me!

10

Put the verbs in brackets into present simple, present continuous or past simple.

- Tina **...is washing...** (wash) her car at the moment.
- Alex **.....** (phone) me yesterday evening.
- "..... (you/watch) the football match on TV last night?"
"No, I **.....** (not/like) football very much."
- Father **.....** (read) his newspaper now. He always **.....** (read) it in the evening.
- They often **.....** (go) to the beach last year.

UNIT 12

Past Simple (Regular/Irregular Verbs)

- 6 We (not/go) to the cinema last night. We (stay) at home and (listen) to music.
- 7 Steve (wake up) at 8.30 yesterday morning. He (have) a shower and then he (eat) a big breakfast.
- 8 Richard usually (leave) the office at 4 o'clock. It is 4.30 now and he (still/work) because he (come) to work late this morning.
- 9 Greg and Catherine (look) for a new flat at present.
- 10 Mr and Mrs Adams usually (visit) their daughter on Sundays.
- 11 Diana (leave) school in 1989. She (study) French at university and she (become) a teacher four years ago.
- 12 The children are in the garden. They (play) with the dog.
- 13 Ben often (meet) his friends on Sunday mornings. Last Sunday they (drive) to the beach and (spend) all day there.
- 14 "Where (be) Peter?" "He (leave) for work a minute ago."
- 15 "When (you/visit) India?" "Ten years ago. I (like) it very much."
- 16 Tom usually (get up) late on Saturday mornings. He (wake up) early last Saturday because he (want) to go to the shops with my sister.

11

First put the verbs into the interrogative form of past simple, then match the questions to the answers.

- 1 What time *...did you get up...* (you/get up) this morning?
- 2 When (she/move) to London?
- 3 Why (he/go) to Paris?
- 4 Where (he/see) the film?
- 5 Whose car (she/drive) this morning?
- 6 Who (they/invite) to dinner?
- 7 What (you/have) for lunch?

- a Four years ago.
- b At the cinema.
- c Pizza.
- d At 8 o'clock. 1
- e Jean and Tom.
- f For a holiday.
- g Robert's.

12

Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple, present continuous or past simple.



Donna: Hello Mark! It's Donna. How are you?

Mark: I'm fine. I **1** *...woke up...* (wake up) half an hour ago and I **2** (have) breakfast at the moment.

Donna: But, it's lunchtime!

Mark: Well, Ann and I **3** (go) to Philip's party last night and we **4** (come) home very late.

Donna: **5** (you/enjoy) the party?

Mark: I **6** (have) a very good time but Ann **7** (not/like) it.

Donna: Oh, why?

Mark: They only **8** (play) rock music and Ann **9** (hate) rock. She **10** (not/dance) at all.

Donna: **11** (they/serve) any food?

Mark: Yes, there **12** (be) a lot of things. What **13** (you/do) last night?

Donna: Well, I ...

13

Underline the correct item.

- 1 Karen washes/is washing her hair every day.
- 2 Mark worked/is working very hard these days.
- 3 I talked/am talking to Carol on the phone a few days ago.
- 4 John stays/is staying with his cousin at present.
- 5 We sometimes eat/are eating bacon and eggs for breakfast.
- 6 Jane breaks/broke her arm last Monday.
- 7 Do you call/Did you call Mike yesterday?
- 8 I get up/got up at 9 o'clock on Sundays.
- 9 They go/went to the Bahamas last summer.
- 10 She is buying/bought a computer three days ago.

Past Simple (Regular/Irregular Verbs)

14 Choose the correct answer.

- Mr Smith is a lawyer. He ... **A** ... a lot of hours.
A works B is working C worked
- Sid me with my homework last night.
A helps B is helping C helped
- The robber over the wall and ran away.
A is jumping B jumps C jumped
- "What is Dad doing?" "He the bathroom."
A is painting B painted C paints
- When Father came, we to the theatre.
A go B went C are going

15 Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs from the list in the correct form of the past simple.

enjoy, break, have

1 Did you go shopping yesterday?

No, I
..... time.

2 How was your meal?

Lovely. We
it very much.

3 When you your leg?

Two days ago.

ORAL Activity

Look at the table below. What did you do last summer? In pairs, ask and answer questions as in the example:

e.g. SA: *Did you travel abroad?* SB: *Yes, I did.*
SA: *Did you stay at a hotel?* SB: *No, I didn't.*



- travel abroad? ✓
- stay at a hotel? x
- swim every day?
- go to a bar every night?
- go fishing?
- meet any new people?
- take any photos?
- sunbathe in the mornings?
- have an accident?
- read any books?
- collect any shells?
- watch the sun set?

WRITING Activity

Imagine that you went abroad last year and write about your holiday. Begin like this:

Last summer I travelled abroad. I went to ..

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

UNIT 13

Present Perfect



He **has bought** a horse.



How long **have they been** married?
They **have been** married for 35 years.



Richard's car **has** just **broken down**.

- ◆ We form the present perfect with the auxiliary verb **have/has** and the past participle. We form the past participle of regular verbs by adding **-ed** to the verb. e.g. *clean - cleaned, study - studied*
We form the past participle of irregular verbs differently. e.g. *give - given* (See list of irregular verbs at the end of the book.) e.g. *I have written a letter.* We form questions by putting **have/has** before the subject pronoun. e.g. *Has she cleaned the room? Have you written a letter?*
We form negations by putting **not** between have/has and the past participle. eg. *She has not/hasn't cleaned the room. I have not/haven't written a letter.*

REGULAR VERB

Affirmative		Negative		Interrogative
Long form	Short form	Long form	Short form	
I have cleaned	I've cleaned	I have not cleaned	I haven't cleaned	Have I cleaned?
You have cleaned	You've cleaned	You have not cleaned	You haven't cleaned	Have you cleaned?
He has cleaned	He's cleaned	He has not cleaned	He hasn't cleaned	Has he cleaned?
She has cleaned	She's cleaned	She has not cleaned	She hasn't cleaned	Has she cleaned?
It has cleaned	It's cleaned	It has not cleaned	It hasn't cleaned	Has it cleaned?
We have cleaned	We've cleaned	We have not cleaned	We haven't cleaned	Have we cleaned?
You have cleaned	You've cleaned	You have not cleaned	You haven't cleaned	Have you cleaned?
They have cleaned	They've cleaned	They have not cleaned	They haven't cleaned	Have they cleaned?

IRREGULAR VERB

Long form	Short form	Long form	Short form	Interrogative
I have eaten	I've eaten	I have not eaten	I haven't eaten		Have I eaten?
You have eaten	You've eaten	You have not eaten	You haven't eaten	Have you eaten?
He has eaten	He's eaten	He has not eaten	He hasn't eaten	Has he eaten?
She has eaten	She's eaten	She has not eaten	She hasn't eaten	Has she eaten?
It has eaten	It's eaten	It has not eaten	It hasn't eaten	Has it eaten?
We have eaten	We've eaten	We have not eaten	We haven't eaten	Have we eaten?
You have eaten	You've eaten	You have not eaten	You haven't eaten	Have you eaten?
They have eaten	They've eaten	They have not eaten	They haven't eaten	Have they eaten?

1 Write the past participles of the following verbs.

- | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 see ... <i>seen</i> ... | 11 catch |
| 2 cut | 12 read |
| 3 work | 13 arrive |
| 4 leave | 14 make |
| 5 feed | 15 give |
| 6 bring | 16 sing |
| 7 swim | 17 teach |
| 8 buy | 18 ring |
| 9 drink | 19 do |
| 10 go | 20 eat |

Use

We use the present perfect:

- ◆ for actions which happened at an unstated indefinite time in the past. The exact time is not important.
e.g. They **have bought** a new house. (When did they buy it? We don't know when; the time is not mentioned.)
- ◆ for actions which started in the past and are still continuing in the present.
e.g. I **have known** Mary for ten years. (We met ten years ago and we still know each other.)
- ◆ for actions which have recently finished and their results are visible in the present.
e.g. Tom **has just painted** the fence. (He has just finished painting. The paint on the fence is still wet.)

Time Expressions

The time expressions used with the present perfect include:

since, for, how long, ever, never, yet, already, just, so far, recently

2 In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts as in the example.

- SA: *Have you seen Mary?*
SB: *Yes, I've seen her.*
- 1 you / see / Mary / Yes
 - 2 Jim / eat / his meal / No
 - 3 John / talk to / his parents / Yes
 - 4 she / read / that book / No
 - 5 they / clean / their house / Yes
 - 6 Mark / buy / a new bike / Yes
 - 7 you / phone / your father / No

3 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the present perfect.

- 1 My friend ... *has opened*... (open) a flower shop in the village.
- 2 I (not/do) my homework yet.
- 3 The baker (bake) many loaves of bread.
- 4 (you/send) aunt Margaret a birthday card yet?
- 5 Grandma (water) the flowers.
- 6 I (lose) my gloves.
- 7 (Fiona and Andrew/move) to a new house yet?
- 8 He (not/finish) his lunch yet.
- 9 Beth (knit) a beautiful red sweater.
- 10 I (forget) his address.
- 11 (the doctor/take) your temperature?
- 12 Nigel (write) a new book.

4 First put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect. Then, in pairs make similar dialogues about yourselves.

- A: What 1) ... *have you done*... (you/do) so far?
B: Lots of things. I 2) (clean) the house, I 3) (cook) lunch and I 4) (take) the dog for a walk. What about you?
A: I 5) (water) the flowers, I 6) (wash) the dishes and I 7) (cut) the grass.

UNIT 13

Present Perfect

How long is used in questions to ask about duration.
e.g. *How long have you worked here?*

For is used to express duration.
e.g. *I've lived here for eight years.*

Since is used to state a starting point.
e.g. *I've known him since 1990.*

- (you / eat / dinner) - (Yes)
- (they / do / their homework) - (No)
- (Tom / write / the letter) - (Yes)
- (Sophia / watch / the news) - (No)
- (Mum / clean / the house) - (No)
- (they / do / the shopping) - (Yes)
- (you / wash / the clothes) - (Yes)
- (Bob / go / to bed) - (No)

5 In pairs, ask and answer questions as in the example.

SA: *How long has Jenny lived here?*
SB: *She has lived here for three years.*

- Jenny / live here / three years.
- Kim / be / a teacher / 1995.
- They / work / here / six months.
- Peter / know / them / last year.
- Rob / be / ill / Tuesday.

6 Fill in *since* or *for*.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 ... <i>for</i> ... six months | 5 last week |
| 2 June | 6 a month |
| 3 two weeks | 7 yesterday |
| 4 three years | 8 1977 |

already/ just are used in statements and go between the verb have and the past participle.

e.g. *They have **already** packed their suitcases. I've **just** phoned him.*

yet is used in questions and negations and goes at the end of the sentence.

e.g. *Have you posted the letter **yet**?
He hasn't written to me **yet**.*

ever is used in questions and goes between the verb have and the past participle.
e.g. *Have you **ever** travelled abroad?*

never is used to make a negative statement and goes between the verb have and the past participle.
e.g. *I have **never** travelled abroad.*

8 Write sentences using the time expressions in brackets, as in the example.

- You have been to America.
(ever) *Have you **ever** been to America?*
(never) *I have **never** been to America.*
- Molly has worked in an office.
(ever)
(never)
- Colin has gone home.
(yet)
(already)
- Ralph and Wendy have eaten breakfast.
(yet)
(just)

9 Fill in the gaps with *yet, recently, how long, never, since, just, so far, for or ever*.

- ...*How long*... have you been a teacher?
- Kate has cleaned the window.
- Have you been to Egypt?
- Sandra has driven a car before.
- I haven't invited anyone to the party
- She has only written one letter
- You have known them five years.
- He hasn't phoned Sunday.
- Toby has bought a dog.

7 In pairs, ask and answer questions as in the examples.

- SA: *Have you eaten dinner yet?*
SB: *Yes, I have **already** eaten dinner.*
- SA: *Have they done their homework yet?*
SB: *No, they haven't **done** their homework **yet**.*

Short Answers

In short answers we only use **Yes** or **No**, the subject pronoun and the auxiliary verb *have/haven't* or *has/hasn't*. We do not repeat the whole question.

e.g. *Have you ever eaten Chinese food?*
Yes, I have./No, I haven't.

Have you ...?	Yes, I/we have. No, I/we haven't.
Has he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it has. No, he/she/it hasn't.
Have they ...?	Yes, they have. No, they haven't.

10

In pairs, first ask and answer questions about **Bill** and **Mary** and then about each other.

- i) SA: *Has Bill ever caught a big fish?*
SB: *Yes, he has.*
- ii) SA: *Have you ever caught a big fish?*
SB: *No, I haven't./Yes, I have.*

	Bill	Mary	You
 catch / big fish	✓	✗	
 fly / in a plane	✗	✓	
 travel / abroad	✓	✗	
 ride / a camel	✓	✗	

Past Simple versus Present Perfect

Past Simple

We use the past simple for:

- an action which happened at a stated time in the past.



They **bought** a big house **ten years ago**. (When? Ten years ago. The time is mentioned.)

- an action which started and finished in the past.



Tom Crown **was** an actor for twenty years. (He is not an actor any more.)

Present Perfect

We use the present perfect for:

- an action which happened at an unstated indefinite time in the past.



They **have bought** a yacht. (When? We don't know. The time is not mentioned.)

- an action which started in the past and is still continuing into the present.



Tom Crown **has been** a director for three years. (He started working as a director three years ago and he still is.)

UNIT 13

Present Perfect

11 Complete the answers as in the example.

- Have you visited your grandparents?
Yes, ... *I visited them* ... last weekend.
- Has David finished his painting?
Yes, on Monday.
- Have you read the letter?
Yes, half an hour ago.
- Has Pam moved house?
Yes, last month.

12 Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect or past simple.

- I ... *didn't go* ... (not/go) to school yesterday because I was ill.
- (you/ever/fly) a kite?
- There is nothing in the box. I (just/empty) it.
- Simon (go) to the theatre last week.
- (you/eat) all the chocolate cake last night?
- (you/wear) your new hat yet?
- I (drink) twelve glasses of water yesterday.
- Dora (visit) five European countries so far.
- (you/come) to work by bus yesterday?
- (you/go) to Samantha's party last Saturday?

13 Put the verbs into the present perfect or past simple.

- A: ... *Have you ever seen*... (you/ever/see) an elephant?
B: Yes, I (see) some in a zoo last summer.
A: (you/touch) them?
B: No, they (be) in their cages.
- A: (you/go) shopping on Saturday?
B: Yes, I (buy) lots of things.
A: What (you/buy)?
B: A jacket, some shoes and a pair of trousers.
- A: (you/finish) your project yet?
B: Yes, I (finish) it last night.
A: (you/type) it yet?
B: Yes, I (already/type) it.
- A: (you/ever/be) to Poland?
B: Yes, I (go) there in 1992.
A: Where (you/stay)?
B: I (stay) at a friend's house in Warsaw.

14 Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect or past simple.



Dear Lydia,

I'm writing to tell you all the latest family news. Aunt Daisy (1) ... *had*... (have) a baby girl a week ago. Uncle Nick is very pleased. They (2) (name) the baby Louise. Uncle Bruce (3) (buy) a new car and he (4) (give) the old one to Aunt Celia. Do you remember my cousin Rupert? Well, he (5) (move) to Germany last month. He (6) (take) his wife and children with him. Grandpa (7) (take) Alex on a fishing trip last weekend. Unfortunately, they (8) (not/catch) any fish!

Grandma (9) (recently/redecorate) the living room. She (10) (paint) the walls pink and (11) (buy) a new carpet to match. It looks lovely.

That's all for now. Take care and write soon with your news.

Love,
Mum

15 Choose the correct answer.

- I'm a teacher. I ... *A*... in a school.
A work B worked C am working
- He goodbye and then he walked away.
A has said B said C says
- "I my work. Can I leave, now?"
A finish B have finished C am finishing
- I on a new book at the moment.
A work B am working C have worked

- 5 make any noise. Mum is sleeping.
A Doesn't B Don't C Didn't
- 6 She always her teeth twice a day.
A brushes B has brushed C is brushing
- 7 I a postcard two days ago. It was from my parents.
A get B have got C got
- 8 We a lot of money on our new house so far.
A spent B have spent C are spending
- 9 There any rice in the cupboard.
A aren't B isn't C is
- 10 This house to my uncle Tom.
A belongs B belong C have belonged

16

Cross out the unnecessary word in each sentence.

- 1 I have broke a vase yesterday.
- 2 Were you be in Paris last month?
- 3 Tom has ever eaten all the fruit.
- 4 There were not no people at the bus stop.
- 5 Alex already cut his finger yesterday.
- 6 John hasn't never phoned me yet.

IN OTHER WORDS

Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

- 1 I saw Tim a week ago.
have I **have not seen Tim for** a week.
- 2 When did you go to Spain?
ago How long **ago did you go** to Spain?
- 3 I became a teacher four years ago.
have I **have been a teacher for** four years.

17

Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

- 1 He became a singer ten years ago.
has He ...*has been a singer for*... ten years.
- 2 They visited their friends a month ago.
have They their friends for a month.
- 3 When did you visit your grandparents?
ago How long your grandparents?
- 4 She has been a doctor for ten years.
became She ten years ago.

ORAL
Activity

Brenda and Luke have moved to a new house. They have been very busy. Look at the table below. *What have they done? What have they not done?* In pairs, ask and answer questions as in the example.

e.g. SA: *Have they hung the curtains up?*
SB: *No, they haven't.*



hang the curtains up	x	repair the taps	x
paint the fence	✓	polish the floors	✓
buy new carpets	✓	plant any trees	x
fix the roof	x	clean the cupboards	✓

WRITING
Activity

Brenda is writing a letter to her friend, Sally. Look at the Oral Activity and complete the letter.

Dear Sally,
We moved into our new house last weekend. It is lovely but we have had lots of things to do.
We haven't hung the curtains up yet, but we have painted the fence.
.....
.....
Moving to a new house is a lot of hard work. I hope everything will be ready when you come to visit us!

Lots of love,
Brenda

UNIT 14

Prepositions

Prepositions of Time



They decorate a tree **at** Christmas. **In** the summer, they go to the beach. His grandfather takes him to the park **on** Sunday mornings.

We use prepositions of time to say when something happens, happened or will happen. The most common ones are **at**, **in** and **on**.

e.g. He goes to school **at** eight o'clock **in** the morning.

AT		IN		ON	
the time:	at 7 o'clock	months:	in September, in March, etc.	days:	on Monday
holidays:	at Christmas at Easter at the weekend	seasons:	in the winter/spring/autumn, etc.		on New Year's Day
in the expressions:	at the moment at present at dawn at noon at night at midnight	years:	in 1996, in 1998, etc.	dates:	on May 6th
		centuries:	in the 20th century	part of a particular day:	on Tuesday evening
		in the expressions:	in the morning/afternoon/evening in an hour in a minute in a week/few days/month/year	adjective + day:	on a hot day

Note: We do not use prepositions of time

- with the words **today**, **tomorrow**, **tonight** or **yesterday**.
e.g. Come to my house **tomorrow morning**.
- before the words **this**, **last**, **next**, **every**, **all**, **some**, **each**, **one** or **any**.
e.g. Let's go to the cinema **next** Saturday.

1 Say each word or phrase with the correct preposition.

e.g. *in March, at Christmas*

March, Christmas, spring, Friday, the weekend, Saturday evening, noon, July 5th, the evening, 9 o'clock, Sunday, 1972, night, the 19th century, 6 o'clock, Monday morning, September 16th, the morning, the winter, Christmas Day, dawn

2 Fill in the gaps with *at*, *on* or *in*.

- I like getting up late ...*at*... the weekend.
- I was born May 14th.
- Let's meet 3:00 and go shopping.
- Friday morning Linda had a French lesson.
- The boat leaves ten minutes.

- 6 He usually meets his friends the evening.
- 7 Call me 2 o'clock tomorrow.
- 8 Tina's birthday party was Sunday night.
- 9 See you a few weeks! Bye!
- 10 Jenny likes staying at home rainy days.

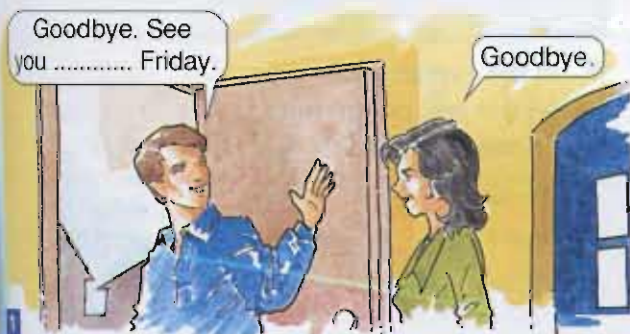
3

Fill in the gaps with at, on or in where necessary.

- 1 Mr Simpson is arriving ...**on**... Friday.
- 2 I like walking in the park hot days.
- 3 The accident happened yesterday evening.
- 4 I am very busy the moment.
- 5 Tom plays tennis every Sunday.
- 6 The bus leaves ten minutes.
- 7 They were at the zoo this morning.
- 8 I have a doctor's appointment today.
- 9 They played tennis last Saturday.
- 10 We can go to the beach Sunday.
- 11 My family has lunch noon.
- 12 We give presents Christmas.
- 13 Don't forget to call Jill tonight.
- 14 The farmer woke up dawn and fed the chickens.
- 15 Jason was fast asleep midnight.

4

Fill in the gaps with at, on or in.



ORAL Activity

These programmes are on TV this weekend. One student chooses a programme without telling the others. The other students ask questions to find out what the programme is. The student who guesses correctly takes the next turn.

	Saturday	Sunday
morning	9.00 Bugs Bunny 11.00 Cinderella	8.00 Mickey Mouse 9.00 The Jungle Book
afternoon	2.00 Detective Smart 4.00 Happy Days	3.00 The Love Boat 4.00 The Monsters
evening	7.00 Basketball Game 9.00 The News	6.00 Showtime with Sharon 9.00 The News

e.g. (Student chooses *The Monsters*)

- | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| S1: Is it on Saturday? | S4: Is it in the afternoon? |
| S2: No, it isn't. | S2: Yes, it is. |
| S3: Is it on Sunday? | S5: Is it at 4 o'clock? |
| S2: Yes, it is. | S2: Yes, it is. |
| | S6: It's <i>The Monsters</i> ! |

UNIT 14

Prepositions

Prepositions of Place

We use prepositions of place to say where somebody or something is. These include: **on**, **under**, **in front of**, **behind**, **beside/next to**, **near**, **at**, **in**, **between** and **among**. We use **between** to say that somebody or something is in the middle of two other things or people. We use **among** to say that somebody or something is in the middle of three or more things or people.



1 The vase is **on** the table.
The cat is **under** the table.



2 Tom is **in front of** Paul.
Paul is **behind** Tom.



3 The armchair is **beside/next to** the fireplace. The lamp is **near** the fireplace.



4 The man is **at** the door.
The children are **in** the room.



5 The house is **between** the bank and the post office.



6 The teacher is standing **among** the students.

We use **at**:

- ◆ in the expressions:
at school/university/college, at work, at home, at the top of ..., at the bottom of ...
- ◆ with addresses when we mention the house number:
at 20, Oxford Street, **BUT** in Oxford Street

We use **in**:

- ◆ in the expressions:
in the middle, in the air, in the sky, in bed, in hospital, in prison, in a newspaper/magazine, in a picture
- ◆ with names of cities, countries and continents:
in Athens, in England, in Europe, in Australia

We use **on**:

- ◆ in the expressions:
on the left, on the right,
on the first/second, etc. floor
- We say:**
on a chair but in an armchair

5 Fill in the gaps with **in**, **at** or **on**.

- 1 What have you got ...**in**... your pocket?
- 2 Where's Paul? He is his bedroom.
- 3 Mother is home.
- 4 I like to sit an armchair by the fire.
- 5 Glasgow is a large city Scotland.
- 6 We live Number 37, King's Road.

- 7 The answer is the bottom of the page.
- 8 My house is the first one the left.
- 9 She has left her purse the chair.
- 10 The manager's office is the second floor.
- 11 Dinner is the table.
- 12 Paul is hospital because he is ill.

6 Underline the correct word(s).

- 1 I'm studying French on/in/at school.
- 2 Your shoes are under/between/at the bed.
- 3 The cat is lying among/in front of/at the fire.
- 4 Sue is standing under/at/behind Nancy.
- 5 The boy is standing on/in/among his friends.
- 6 Who was that woman beside/under/on your mother?
- 7 Our house is among/near/in the fire station.
- 8 He has a computer in front of/on/at his desk.
- 9 The children are playing at/on/in the garden.
- 10 The sofa is at/next to/among the table.
- 11 I sit at/in/between my two best friends in class.
- 12 George studied History in/on/at the University of Essex.

7 Fill in the gaps with one of the prepositions from the list.

near - on - at - in front of - in

Dear Sally,

My family and I are (1) ... in ... New York. We are spending the Christmas holidays with our relatives.

We are staying (2) my uncle's house. I'm having a lot of fun with my cousins. There is a park (3) their house. We play (4) the swings and slides every day.

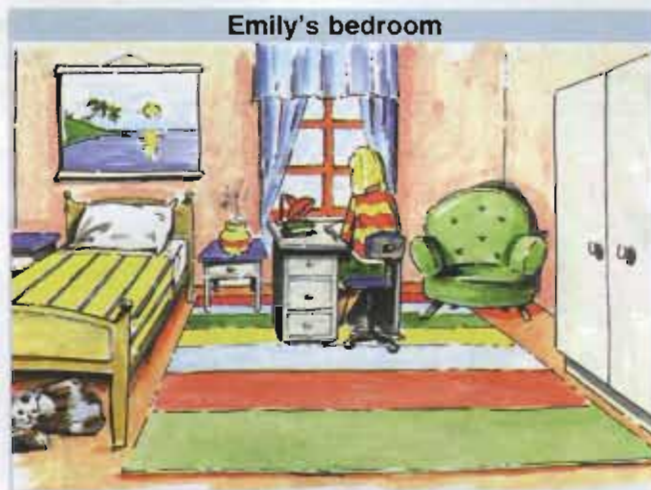
There was a snowstorm yesterday! There is a lot of snow (5) the ground now. My cousins and I want to make a snowman (6) the house.

I hope you had a good time (7) Italy. Write soon.

Love,
Janet

8 Fill in the gaps with the correct preposition from the list. You can use one of them twice.

under, in, at, next to, near, in front of, between, on



Emily is sitting 1) ... at ... her desk. The desk is 2) the window. There is a lamp 3) it. Emily's bed is 4) two small tables. There is a carpet 5) the floor. Her cat is 6) the bed. The wardrobe is 7) her desk. Emily's clothes are 8) the wardrobe. There is an armchair 9) the desk.

ORAL Activity

Look at the picture in Ex. 8 and cover the text. In pairs, ask and answer questions about the things in Emily's room as in the example.

- e.g. SA: Where is Emily's cat?
SB: It's under the bed.
SA: Where is Emily's desk?
SB: It's in front of the window.

WRITING Activity

Draw a picture of your bedroom and describe it.

This is my bedroom. There is a
.....
.....
.....

UNIT 14

Prepositions

Prepositions of Movement

We use prepositions of movement to show the direction in which somebody or something is moving. These include: **over, along, across, up, down, into, out of, round, onto, through** and **from ... to ...**.



1 The plane is flying **over** the city.
The car is going **along** the street.
The man is walking **across** the street.



4 The policeman is coming **round** the corner.
The thief is jumping **onto** the truck.



2 The boy is going **up** the hill.
The girl is going **down** the hill.



5 The bus is going **through** a tunnel.
The bus is going **from** London to Oxford.



3 The man is getting **into** the taxi.
The woman is getting **out of** the taxi.

Note: When we talk about a means of transport, we use the preposition **by**.
e.g. **by** car / bus / train / taxi / plane / boat
BUT: on foot

9 Fill in the gaps with **up, into, through, round, onto, from...to, over or down**.

- 1 The dog is jumping ...**onto**... the table.
- 2 The postman has just gone the corner.
- 3 How far is it your house the post office?

- 4 The train is going the tunnel.
- 5 The plane is flying the village.
- 6 Look! That man has climbed the ladder.
- 7 Tears are running his face.
- 8 Come the house and get warm.

10 Underline the correct word(s).

- 1 You must go up/across/into the bridge to get to school.
- 2 Put the cake into/out of/through the oven.
- 3 The motorbike is going down/onto/through the tunnel.
- 4 The children ran onto/out of/over the classrooms when the bell rang.
- 5 I go to school on/by/onto foot.
- 6 The pop singer is ready to sing. He is coming through/over/onto the stage.
- 7 The child is running through/over/across the road.
- 8 The cat has jumped down/onto/across the car.
- 9 You must always take off your shoes when you come into/down/round the house.
- 10 He goes to work by/on/into bus every day.

11 Fill in the gaps with *along, up, through, down, out of and across*. Then, say how you can get from the post office to the railway station.

- A: Excuse me. Where is the post office?
 B: Go 1) ...along... King's Road and go 2) the tunnel. When you come 3) the tunnel, turn left. Walk until you get to the bridge. Go 4) the steps, 5) the bridge and 6) the steps. Then go 7) the road and the post office is in front of you.



ORAL
Activity

Look at the picture and fill in the correct prepositions from the list. Then, cover the text and describe the picture.

onto, through, out of, to, over, down, into, along, up



It is Saturday morning. Tim and Bob are playing football in the garden. Their sister Jenny is getting 1) ...onto... her bicycle. Her friends are riding their bicycles 2) the pavement. Their father is carrying the shopping bags 3) the house. Their mother is coming 4) the house. Someone is painting their house. He is climbing 5) the ladder. A black cat is jumping 6) from the tree. A white cat is going 7) the house 8) the window. Some birds are flying 9) the house.

WRITING
Activity

Find pictures from a magazine and say what the people are doing using *prepositions of movement*.

UNIT 15

The Future

Future Simple



- A: What **will** you **buy** Sandra for her birthday?
- B: I think I'll **buy** her a bottle of perfume. What about you?
- A: Perhaps I'll **buy** her a pair of earrings.
Will you **help** me choose them?
- B: **Yes, I will.**

◆ We form the future simple with **will** and the root form of the verb. e.g. He **will visit** his friends. They **will go** to the cinema. We form questions by putting **will** before the subject pronoun. e.g. **Will he** visit his friends? **Will they** go to the cinema? We form negations by putting **not** after **will**. e.g. He **will not/won't** visit his friends. They **will not/won't** go to the cinema.

Affirmative		Negative		Interrogative
Long form	Short form	Long form	Short form	
I will leave	I'll leave	I will not leave	I won't leave	Will I leave?
you will leave	you'll leave	you will not leave	you won't leave	Will you leave?
he will leave	he'll leave	he will not leave	he won't leave	Will he leave?
she will leave	she'll leave	she will not leave	she won't leave	Will she leave?
it will leave	it'll leave	it will not leave	it won't leave	Will it leave?
we will leave	we'll leave	we will not leave	we won't leave	Will we leave?
you will leave	you'll leave	you will not leave	you won't leave	Will you leave?
they will leave	they'll leave	they will not leave	they won't leave	Will they leave?

1 Fill in the short forms as in the example.

Long Form	Short Form
1 She will come	She ll come.
2 I will pay in cash.	I pay in cash.
3 They will not sing.	They sing.
4 We will help.	We help.
5 He will not run.	He run.
6 You will be late.	You be late.

2 In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts as in the example.

SA: *He won't come to work today.*
SB: *Will he come to work tomorrow, then?*

- He / not come / to work today.
- She / not cook / a meal today.
- They / not go out / tonight.
- She / not visit / them tonight.
- I / not study / tonight.
- He / not sing / tonight.

Use

We use the future simple:

a) for future actions which are not definite.
e.g. *We'll travel around the world one day.*



b) for predictions about the future.
e.g. *You'll be a great computer operator one day.*



c) for threats or warnings.
e.g. *Be quiet or I'll send you out.*



d) for promises or on-the-spot decisions.
e.g. *I'll buy you this ring.*

e) with the verbs **hope, think, believe, expect**, etc. the expressions **I'm sure, I'm afraid** etc. and the adverbs **probably, perhaps**, etc.

e.g. *I hope he will pass his exams.
Perhaps I'll see her tonight.*

Time Expressions

The time expressions used with the future simple include:

tomorrow, the day after tomorrow, next week/month/year, tonight, soon, in a week/month/year, etc.

3 Fill in the gaps with will ('ll) or will not (won't).

- You are late. You *won't* get there in time.
- "The ice-cream is melting." "I put it in the freezer."
- Perhaps Tom start looking for a better job.
- I be able to help you tomorrow because I'm busy.
- "We haven't got any milk." "I buy some."
- Put on your coat or you get cold.
- I'm afraid I have time to go shopping with you next Saturday.
- I expect I see Brenda at the party the day after tomorrow.
- It's Fay's birthday next week. I send her a birthday card.
- Stuart is very tired. I think he go to bed early tonight.

4 Fill in the gaps with the verbs from the list in the future simple.

help, go, lend, order, take, show

- A: I've lost my wallet.
B: I ...*ll help*... you find it.
- A: I've forgotten my umbrella.
B: I you mine.
- A: We haven't got any milk.
B: Never mind. I and buy some.
- A: The dog is ill.
B: I it to the vet.
- A: Have you got a new car?
B: Yes, I it to you later.
- A: I don't want to cook tonight.
B: OK. I a pizza, then.

5 Write questions and negations.

- They will be back soon.
...Will they be back soon? They won't be back soon...
- Tom will go to Africa next year.
.....
- She will visit us next Tuesday.
.....

UNIT 15

The Future

Short Answers

In short answers we only use the subject pronoun and *will/won't*. We do not repeat the whole question.

e.g. *Will you be back in an hour?* Yes, I will./No, I won't.

Will you ...?	Yes, I/we will.	No, I/we won't.
Will he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it will.	No, he/she/it won't.
Will they ...?	Yes, they will.	No, they won't.

6 Fill in the short answers.

- Will they go camping next week?
Yes, ...*they will*....
- Will Tom buy a car next year? No,
- Will Fiona go to a concert tonight? No,
- Will the children decorate the cake? Yes,
- Will Mother be back in an hour? No,
- Will Peter call Kate tonight? Yes,
- Will you help me fix the TV? No,

Be going to - Will - Present Continuous



It is going to rain.
(It is certain. There are clouds in the sky so there is **visible evidence**.)



*You **will be** a great pianist one day.*
(**Prediction**)



*He **is having** a meeting with his boss in an hour. (He **has already arranged** it.)*

Be Going to

- We form the affirmative with the verb **to be** (is, am, are), **going to** and the root form of the verb. e.g. *He is going to eat out tonight.* We form questions by putting the verb **to be** before the subject pronoun. e.g. *Is he going to eat out tonight?* We form negations by putting **not** after the verb to be. e.g. *He is not/isn't going to eat out tonight.*

Affirmative		Negative		Interrogative
Long form	Short form	Long form	Short form	
I am going to leave	I'm going to leave	I am not going to leave	I'm not going to leave	Am I going to leave?

- We use **be going to**:
 - for plans and intentions for the (near) future. e.g. *I am going to play football this afternoon. He is going to buy a bike this summer.*
 - when there is evidence that something is going to happen in the near future. e.g. *It is going to rain. There are dark clouds in the sky.*

Present Continuous

- We can use the present continuous for actions we have already arranged to do in the near future. e.g. *I am meeting Helen at two o'clock.* Also, with verbs of movement such as: **come, go, fly, travel, leave**, etc. e.g. *I am leaving for Paris tomorrow. (I have already arranged it.)*

7 Read the following sentences. Then, say what these people are going to do using the words from the list.

study all day, post it, sleep, have a party, go to the hairdresser's, take a taxi

- 1 Kim and Paul are tired. ...*They're going to sleep*....
- 2 Richard has written a letter.
- 3 Kate has missed the bus.
- 4 Mrs Hunter's hair is untidy.
- 5 It is Jane's birthday.
- 6 Bob has an exam tomorrow.

8 Fill in the gaps with the correct form of *be going to* and the verbs in brackets.

- 1 I ...*am going to buy*... (buy) a new car next month.
- 2 When (you/tidy) your bedroom? It's very messy!
- 3 Bob (play) football on Saturday because he has hurt his leg.
- 4 Barry and Jason (visit) their grandparents on Sunday.
- 5 (Denise/appear) in the new TV series?
- 6 Monica (sing) in the concert. She has got a sore throat.
- 7 I (walk) to school today. I'll take the bus.
- 8 (you/help) me wash the dishes after lunch?
- 9 Helen (cook) dinner for some friends tomorrow.
- 10 Ruth (come) with us. She's too busy at work.

Short Answers

In short answers with *be going to* we only use **Yes** or **No**, the subject pronoun and the verb *to be*. We do not repeat the whole question. e.g. *Are you going to wash the car?* Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.

Are you ...?	Yes, I am/we are.	No, I'm not/we aren't.
Is he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it is.	No, he/she/it isn't.
Are they ...?	Yes, they are.	No, they aren't.

9 Look at the Taylors' family diary for next week. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts as in the example.

e.g. SA: *Are Eric and Rose going to wash the car on Sunday?*
SB: *Yes, they are.*



Sunday	Eric and Rose — wash the car
Monday	Mrs Taylor — visit her mum
Tuesday	Mr and Mrs Taylor — play tennis
Wednesday	Eric — study for an exam
Thursday	Rose — tidy her room

- 1 Eric and Rose / wash the car / Sunday?
- 2 Mrs Taylor / visit her mum / Tuesday?
- 3 Mr and Mrs Taylor / play tennis / Tuesday?
- 4 Eric / study for an exam / Thursday?
- 5 Rose / tidy her room / Thursday?

10 Fill in the gaps with *will* or *be going to* and one of the verbs from the list.

visit, answer, be, write, study, finish

- 1 A: The phone is ringing.
B: *Okay. I'll answer it.*
- 2 A: You haven't finished your homework yet.
B: I know. I it after I have a bath.
- 3 A: Do you like singing?
B: Yes, I do. I a singer.
- 4 A: Do you want to go out for dinner tonight?
B: I can't. I for my exams.
- 5 A: Please write to us.
B: I promise we regularly.
- 6 A: Have you made plans for Christmas?
B: Yes, I my parents in Brighton.

UNIT 15 The Future

11

What does *will/be going to* express in each sentence? **Underline the correct meaning.**

- I'll have some cheesecake. (*on-the-spot decision/promise*)
- Don't go out! You'll catch a cold. (*intention/warning*)
- Pamela is going to have a baby in June. (*evidence/threat*)
- You will meet a very rich and handsome man. (*prediction/intention*)
- Stop that noise or I'll send you to your room. (*on-the-spot decision/threat*)
- Mary's going to buy a present for Tom this afternoon. (*intention/promise*)
- I'll help you cut down the tree tomorrow. (*prediction/promise*)

12

Fill in the gaps with the *future simple*, *be going to* or the *present continuous*.

- The tree is falling. It is going to hit (hit) that car!
- I can't meet you today. I (have) lunch with my boss in an hour.
- It's hot in here. I (take off) my sweater.
- Tom (fly) to New York on Friday. He has already bought his ticket.
- She likes children. She (be) a teacher.
- I'm sure Kim (not/let) you drive her new car.
- I can't go to the cinema on Saturday. I (go) to the shops with my mother.
- I think it (snow) on Christmas Day this year.

13

Choose the correct answer.

- Do you think it will rain tomorrow?
A rained B has rained C will rain
- Beth to the cinema every Saturday.
A has gone B is going C goes
- They three films so far.
A have seen B saw C see
- Put on your coat or you a cold.
A be catching B have caught C will catch

- I dinner with Paul this evening. Do you want to join us?
A will have B am having C have had
- Grandmother us in our new house yet.
A didn't visit B hasn't visited
C doesn't visit
- I usually my clothes on Monday mornings.
A wash B washes C have washed
- I a big chocolate cake for my birthday last year.
A will bake B have baked C baked
- I for a new job this summer.
A am going to look B am looking
C have looked
- Mum the kitchen at the moment.
A cleaned B has cleaned C is cleaning

14

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.



Dear Anita,

I (1) (have) a lovely time here in Egypt. I (2) (stay) in Cairo in a nice hotel with my family. I (3) (see) many wonderful things so far. Yesterday morning I (4) (go) to see the Pyramids. They (5) (be) amazing. In the evening we (6) (go) to a restaurant and we (7) (taste) traditional food. Tomorrow we (8) (visit) Alexandria. I'm sure I (9) (like) it very much. Egypt is an exciting country!

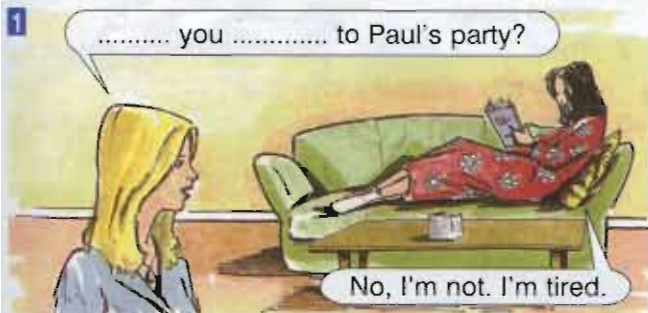
Are you having a good time at home, too? See you soon.

Best Wishes,
Vanessa

15

Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs from the list. Use **future simple** or **present continuous**.

be, do, have, come



16

Cross out the extra word.

- 1 They are being going to visit the zoo on Saturday.
- 2 Tom won't not have time to go shopping tomorrow.
- 3 Have you never spoken to Jim about your plans yet?
- 4 He is going playing tennis now.
- 5 Peter has broke his leg yesterday.

ORAL Activity

Robert Harris is a businessman. Look at his secretary's notes about his trip to Germany. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts as in the example.

SA: Is Mr Harris flying at 12 o'clock on Tuesday?
SB: No, he isn't. He's flying at 10 o'clock on Monday morning.



Monday December 16th
fly - 10.00 (morning)
meet - Mr Miller - 12.00
have lunch - with Mr Miller - 2.00

Tuesday December 17th
make a speech - 11.00
give an interview - 3.00
fly back - 6.00

- 1 fly / 12.00 / Tuesday?
- 2 meet Mr Miller / 12.00 / Monday?
- 3 have lunch with Mr Miller / 3.00 / Monday?
- 4 make a speech / 11.00 / Tuesday?
- 5 give an interview / 5.00 / Tuesday?
- 6 fly back / 6.00 / Tuesday?

WRITING Activity

Now write about Mr Harris' plans. Use these words to join your sentences: **First, Then, After that, Finally**

Mr Harris is flying to Germany at 10.00 on Monday morning. **First**, he is meeting

After that

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Revision 3 (Units 1 - 15)

1 Fill in *was, wasn't, were or weren't*.

- The children ...*were*... at the beach yesterday.
- Ben at the park. He was at home.
- the students at school?
- Sara and Mike at a restaurant. They were at a café.
- Betty at the library?
- All the doctors at the hospital very busy.
- Ben at the clothes shop. He was at the record shop.

2 Fill in the gaps with *for, since, already, yet, just, never or ever*.

- I've ...*already*... finished my homework but Mark is still doing his.
- Jane hasn't been to the zoo
- We haven't seen Julie March.
- We've known each other years.
- I've taken the cake out of the oven. It's still hot.
- He's been to Paris twice this year.
- I have tasted Chinese food, but I want to.
- Have you tried to climb a tree?
- I haven't eaten anything yesterday.
- Has Peter returned the books to the library?
- Dave's been ill three days.
- We haven't got our exam results

3 Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple.

- Yesterday I 1) ...*went*... (go) to the circus. I 2) (have) a great time. I 3) (watch) the clowns and 4) (see) the animals perform their tricks. I 5) (buy) an ice-cream and I also 6) (eat) a lot of popcorn! My favourite part 7) (be) when the acrobats 8) (do) their act. They 9) (be) amazing. After the show, I 10) (catch) a bus home. I 11) (feel) very tired but I really 12) (enjoy) my visit.



4 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

- Please, be quiet! We ...*are trying*... (try) to get some sleep.
- They (have) milk and cereal for breakfast yesterday morning.
- Jack (play) squash every Thursday afternoon.
- "How long (you/know) the Jeffersons?" "Since 1992."
- At present, George (help) his mother with the housework.
- "When (Jack/ask) you to marry him?" "Two months ago."
- I'm sure Janet (help) you clean up this mess later.
- Don't touch the wall! I (just/paint) it!
- Claire (not/come) to my party last night.
- My brother always (bring) me a nice present on my birthday.
- (you/want) to listen to some music?
- I'm afraid Susan (not/be) here for your engagement party.
- (Dad/repair) the car yet?
- John Miller (publish) three books so far.
- Drink your milk or I (not/take) you to the zoo.

5 Put the verbs in brackets into the future simple or the be going to form.

- My car is old. I ...*am going to look for*... (look for) a new one next month.
- It's raining outside. Take an umbrella or you (get) wet.
- The buses are not running tomorrow. Peter (walk) to work.
- "I (pay) for the drinks this time. It's my turn."
- I'm sure John (not/miss) tonight's match on TV.
- "The dog is dirty." "I know. I (wash) him in a few minutes."
- It's Sarah's birthday tomorrow. Her husband (probably/cook) something special for her.
- Mary (give) a party next week. She has already invited most of her friends.

UNIT 16

Adjectives/Adverbs/Comparisons

Adjectives/Adverbs



James is a racing driver.
He is **young** and **famous**. He's got a **fast** car.
Racing drivers never drive **slowly**. They drive very **fast**.

◆ An **adjective** describes a noun. Adjectives go before nouns. They can also be used alone after the verb to be. They have the same form in the singular and plural. e.g. This is a **big** house. He is **poor**. They are **poor**. (**NOT**: They are ~~poor's~~)

◆ An **adverb** describes a verb. It shows *how*, *where*, *when* or *how often* someone does something. Adverbs usually go after verbs.

e.g. He walks **slowly**. (How does he walk? Slowly - adverb of manner), John is **here**. (Where is he? Here - adverb of place), He wakes up **early**. (When does he wake up? Early - adverb of time)

Sometimes adverbs go before the main verb, e.g. the adverbs of frequency (often, always, etc.).

e.g. She **often** visits her parents.

◆ Formation of adverbs

- We usually form an adverb by adding **-ly** to the adjective.
e.g. **slow** – **slowly**
- Adjectives ending in **-le** drop the **e** and take **y**. e.g. **simple** – **simply**
- Adjectives ending in **consonant + y** drop the **y** and take **-ily**.
e.g. **angry** – **angrily**
- Adjectives ending in **-i** take **-ly**.
e.g. **careful** – **carefully**

Irregular Adverbs

Some adverbs are not formed according to the above rules. They have either a different form or the same form as the adjective.

Adjective	Adverb
good	well
fast	fast
hard	hard
early	early
late	late

1 Write the adverbs.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1 polite ... politely ... | 10 fast |
| 2 dangerous | 11 beautiful |
| 3 nice | 12 soft |
| 4 easy | 13 early |
| 5 good | 14 noisy |
| 6 cheap | 15 careful |
| 7 safe | 16 happy |
| 8 hard | 17 terrible |
| 9 comfortable | 18 awful |

2 Are the words in bold adjectives or adverbs? Say what type the adverbs are as in the example.

- He is a **good** student. ...**adjective**...
- She speaks **loudly**. ...**adverb of manner**...
- They arrived **early**.
- He is working **hard**.
- She is a **pretty** girl.
- Your father is **here**.
- They **usually** eat out.
- He drives **carefully**.
- He is leaving **tomorrow**.
- You dance very **well**.
- She learns **quickly**.
- The film was **sad**.
- These biscuits are **hard**.
- It was an **easy** exam.

Adjectives/Adverbs/Comparisons

look, smell, sound, feel, taste + adjective

The verbs **look, smell, sound, feel, taste** take an adjective, not an adverb. e.g. They look **happy**. (NOT: They look ~~happily~~.) He feels **terrible**. (NOT: He feels ~~terribly~~.)

3 Fill in the gaps with one of the adjectives from the list.

happy, nice, hot, delicious



This cake tastes really



You feel, Tom.



You sound very



These flowers smell

4 Underline the correct item.

- 1 My bedroom is tidy/tidily.
- 2 It is snowing heavy/heavily.
- 3 Cross the road careful/carefully.
- 4 My teacher was very angry/angrily yesterday.
- 5 Get ready for school quick/quickly.
- 6 The test was very easy/easily.

- 7 Your perfume smells nice/nicely.
- 8 Susan is smiling happy/happily.
- 9 This sweater feels very soft/softly.
- 10 He sings beautiful/beautifully.
- 11 It is very warm/warmly today.
- 12 She looks beautiful/beautifully tonight.

5 Match questions 1 - 7 to answers a - g.

COLUMN A	COLUMN B
1 When will you wash your clothes?	a Yesterday.
2 How are your parents?	b It was very tiring.
3 Where is the rabbit?	c Tomorrow.
4 When did you go shopping?	d It's very funny.
5 What do you think of this film?	e Over there.
6 How was your trip?	f They're very well.
7 How often do you play tennis?	g Twice a week.

6 Fill in the gaps with good, well, hard and fast. Then, say if each is an adjective or an adverb.

- 1 Janet is a good singer. She sings very well.
- 2 I was ill yesterday but now I am
- 3 You must run to catch that bus.
- 4 I can't bite this bread. It's too
- 5 Philip isn't clever but he tries very at school.
- 6 That horse is a runner. It wins every race.
- 7 This cake tastes really
- 8 Denise is never naughty. She is a girl.

7 Rewrite the sentences using a verb and an adverb as in the example.

- 1 He is a good writer. He writes well.
- 2 She is a slow runner.
- 3 They are clever players.
- 4 He is a careful driver.
- 5 They are hard workers.
- 6 Fiona is a bad singer.
- 7 Paula is a beautiful dancer.

Comparisons



This house is **big**. It is also **expensive**.



This house is **bigger than** the first. It is also **more expensive**.



This house is **the biggest and the most expensive of all**.

- ◆ Adjectives have got two forms: **comparative** and **superlative**.
- ◆ We use the **comparative form + than** to compare **two** people or things. e.g. Tom is **taller than** Richard. Russia is **larger than** Australia.
- ◆ We use the **+ superlative form + of/in** to compare three or more people or things. e.g. Chris is **the tallest of all**. We use **in** when we talk about places. e.g. Russia is **the largest country in** the world. NOT: ~~of~~ the world
- ◆ Formation of the comparative and superlative of adjectives
Adjectives of one or two syllables form the comparative by adding **-er** and the superlative by adding **-est**. e.g. fast - faster - fastest. Adjectives of more than two syllables form the comparative with **more** and the superlative with **most**. e.g. beautiful - more beautiful - most beautiful. Some adjectives such as clever, stupid, narrow, gentle, friendly, etc form the comparative and superlative either with **-er/-est** or with **more/most**. e.g. clever - cleverer - cleverest OR clever - more clever - most clever

Spelling Rules

- ◆ One-syllable adjectives ending in **-e** take **-r** in the comparative and **-st** in the superlative form. e.g. large - larger - largest
- ◆ Two-syllable adjectives ending in **-y** turn the **-y** into **-i** and then take **-er/-est**. e.g. happy - happier - happiest
- ◆ Adjectives ending in a **stressed vowel** between two consonants double the final consonant and then take **-er/-est**. big - bigger - biggest but old - older - oldest

8

Write the comparative and superlative form of the following adjectives.

- | | | | |
|----|-----------|---------------|----------------|
| 1 | small | ...smaller... | ...smallest... |
| 2 | big | ..... | ..... |
| 3 | weak | ..... | ..... |
| 4 | dangerous | ..... | ..... |
| 5 | slow | ..... | ..... |
| 6 | pretty | ..... | ..... |
| 7 | safe | ..... | ..... |
| 8 | beautiful | ..... | ..... |
| 9 | fat | ..... | ..... |
| 10 | sad | ..... | ..... |

The comparative and superlative of adverbs

Adverbs form the comparative and superlative in the same way as adjectives. Adverbs of one or two syllables take **-er** in the comparative and **-est** in the superlative. e.g. *hard - harder - hardest*, *early - earlier - earliest*.

The adverbs which are formed by adding **-ly** to the adjective (adverbs of manner), take **more** in the comparative and **most** in the superlative. e.g. *carefully - more carefully - most carefully*.

9 Write the comparative and superlative form of the following adverbs.

- 1 easily ...*more easily*... ...*most easily*...
- 2 fast
- 3 late
- 4 clearly
- 5 carelessly
- 6 generously
- 7 hard
- 8 early

Irregular Comparatives and Superlatives

	Comparative	Superlative
good/well	better	best
bad/badly	worse	worst
much/many/ a lot of	more	most
little	less	least
far	further/farther	furthest/farthest

10 Write sentences using the prompts given, as in the example.

- 1 George's house is very big.
...*Yes, it's bigger than mine*...
- 2 Sally's dress is very expensive.
- 3 Peter's sister is very young.
- 4 Tom's job is very exciting.
- 5 Jenny's hair is very long.
- 6 This book is very interesting.

11 Write sentences using the prompts given, as in the example.

- 1 That's a fast car.
...*It's the fastest car I've ever seen*...
- 2 Those are expensive rings.
- 3 That's a small house.
- 4 That's a big plane.
- 5 That's a tall building.
- 6 That's a long snake.
- 7 Those are nice flowers.
- 8 That's a cheap watch.

12 Fill in the comparative form as in the example.

- 1 My motorbike goes ...*faster than*... (fast) yours.
- 2 I work (hard) Paul.
- 3 Today it is (cold) yesterday.
- 4 I'm (old) you.
- 5 English is (little) difficult Japanese.
- 6 The last bus was (crowded) the first bus.
- 7 I need a (big) bag this.
- 8 Travelling by train is (expensive) travelling by bus.
- 9 A coat costs (much) a jacket.
- 10 Vegetables are (good) for your health crisps.

13 Fill in the superlative form as in the example.

- 1 Sarah is ...*the youngest*... person in my family. (young)
- 2 That is dress I have ever seen. (horrible)
- 3 Roses are the flowers which have smell. (nice)
- 4 January is month of the year. (cold)
- 5 That was joke I've ever heard. (funny)
- 6 She is woman I've ever met. (beautiful)
- 7 Mrs Green is person I know. (interesting)
- 8 This is song I've ever heard. (bad)

UNIT 16

Adjectives/Adverbs/Comparisons

14 Fill in the gaps with the adjectives in brackets and the comparative or superlative form where necessary.

- I am ...*younger than*... my brother. (young)
- That is programme on television. (good)
- That was meal I've ever had. (tasty)
- My Maths teacher is very (clever)
- The old train is the new train. (slow)
- I have got money my sister. (much)
- This is tree the forest. (tall)
- The music is very (loud)
- The watch is very (expensive)
- Chris is student all. (intelligent)

as...as/not as...as

When we want to say that two people or things are the same, we use **as...as**. e.g. *Helen is as tall as Kate.*

In negations we use **not as ... as**. e.g. *Mary is not as clever as Julie.*

15 Complete the sentences using **as...as** or **than** and the word in brackets.

- I don't eat ...*as much as*... you. (much)
- England has people Holland. (more)
- I can't speak French you. (well)
- Harry isn't I am. (strong)
- Chocolate isn't milk. (healthy)
- Bill's car isn't Tim's. (fast)
- Julie isn't her cousin. (old)
- This knife is that one. (sharper)
- This dictionary is that one. (good)
- The petrol station is from my house the bank. (farther)

16 Fill in the gaps with the adjectives/adverbs in brackets and the comparative or superlative form where necessary.



- The mouse is not ...*as big as*... (big) the dog.
- The elephant is (heavy) all.
- The dog is (heavy) the mouse.
- The dog is (noisy) the mouse.
- The dog can run (fast) the elephant.
- The dog is (small) the elephant.
- Elephants live (long) dogs.
- The elephant is not (friendly) the dog.

17 Choose the correct answer.

- He is ...*C*... man in the world.
A tall B taller C the tallest
- I am than my sister.
A old B older C the oldest
- This picture is of all.
A good B better C the best
- My car was than yours.
A expensive B more expensive
C the most expensive
- This is film I've ever seen.
A boring B more boring C the most boring
- Dan is not as as Henry.
A thin B thinner C the thinnest
- My shopping bag is as as yours.
A heavy B heavier C the heaviest
- I think History is a(n) subject.
A interesting B more interesting
C the most interesting
- England is very in winter.
A cold B colder C the coldest
- Trains are than bicycles.
A fast B faster C the fastest

IN OTHER WORDS

Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

- 1 Mary is shorter than Susan.
as Susan **is not as short as** Mary.
- 2 I have never seen such a tall tree.
the It's **the tallest tree I have** ever seen.
- 3 Greg is 1.80m tall. Paul is 1.80m tall.
as Greg **is as tall as** Paul.

18 Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

- 1 Paris is more beautiful than London.
as London is ...**not as beautiful as**... Paris.
- 2 My brother is 15 years old. Your sister is 15 years old.
as My brother your sister.
- 3 We have never read such an interesting book.
the It's we have ever read.
- 4 I play tennis better than John.
well John doesn't as I do.
- 5 Stella has never met such a friendly teacher.
the He's Stella has ever met.
- 6 George weighs 70 kilos. Nick weighs 70 kilos.
heavy George is Nick.
- 7 It is the best meal I have ever had.
such I a good meal.
- 8 Spain isn't as cold as Sweden.
than Sweden is Spain.

19 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Chris is more cleverer than Scott.
- 2 Jill is prettier from Sylvia.
- 3 Chocolate ice-cream is the more delicious of all.
- 4 She is a very taller woman.
- 5 The bus is longest than my car.
- 6 A Fiat isn't as more expensive as a Porsche.

ORAL Activity

A friend of yours is visiting your city. He wants to stay at a nice hotel. In pairs, look at the pictures of the three hotels and make comparisons as in the example. Use the adjectives in the list.

old, modern, big, small, a lot of, expensive, far



Built in: 1930
Rooms: 30
Price: £25 per night
Distance from city centre: 4 km



Built in: 1820
Rooms: 60
Price: £40 per night
Distance from city centre: 2 km



Built in: 1990
Rooms: 200
Price: £80 per night
Distance from city centre: 1 km

SA: The Star Hotel is not as old as the Pearl Hotel.
SB: The Crown Hotel is the most modern of all.

WRITING Activity

Which hotel do you like most? Write about it using comparisons. Begin like this:

The hotel I like most is the
Hotel. It is
.....
.....

UNIT 17

Questions



Andrew: **Is this** your dog?
 Ben: **Yes, it is.**
 Andrew: **Did you** get him from a pet shop?
 Ben: **No, we didn't.**



Al: **What have you got** in this bag?
 Betty: A new dress.
 Al: **How much did it cost?**
 Betty: £35.

◆ There are two types of questions:

a) Questions with Yes/No answers

These kinds of question begin with an auxiliary verb (e.g. **is, are, have, has, will, can, do, does, did**, etc.) and then the subject. We usually answer these questions with **Yes/No** answers. e.g. *Are you watching TV?* Yes, I am./*Have you finished yet?* No, I haven't./*Can you type?* No, I can't. When the main verb is in the **present simple** (play, works, etc.) we form the question with the auxiliary verb **do/does**. e.g. *Do you play golf every Saturday?* Yes, I do./*Does he work hard?* No, he doesn't. When the main verb is in the **past simple** (arrived, sent, etc.) we form the question with the auxiliary verb **did**. e.g. *Did she arrive early last night?* Yes, she did./*Did they send you a letter?* No, they didn't.

b) Wh- questions

Wh- questions begin with a question word. We put the auxiliary verb before the subject.

people	things	place	time	quantity/number	manner	reason	age
who	what	where	when	How much	how	why	how old
whose	which		how long (ago)	How many			
			how often				

e.g. **Who** is that man? He's her father.
Whose is that coat? It's Jane's.
What is it? It's a pen.
Where are my glasses? They're in your bag.
When did he arrive? Yesterday.
Why are you sad? Because I've lost my purse.
Which book is yours? The blue one.

How are you? Fine thanks.
How often do you go out? Twice a week.
How much is it? £10.
How many sisters have you got? Two.
How long have you known her? For three years.
How long ago did you leave school? Four years ago.
How old are you? I'm sixteen.

1 Make questions, as in the examples.

- I have got a dog. (you) ... *Have you got a dog, too?* ...
- I live in the country. (Sally) ... *Does Sally live in the country, too?* ...

- I went out last night. (you)
- I can drive. (David)
- I like pizza. (you)
- I have got long hair. (she)
- I am wearing a hat. (Donna)

2 Fill in the gaps with one of the question words from the list.

who, what, which, where, how long, when, what time, how often, how, whose

- 1 *Whose*..... is this bag? My sister's.
- 2 are the children? At school.
- 3 is Paul coming back? Tomorrow.
- 4 does he drive? Very dangerously.
- 5 is that woman? Mary Smith.
- 6 do you finish work? At four o'clock.
- 7 do they buy a newspaper? Every day.
- 8 is her name? Catherine.
- 9 city do you like best? Rome or Milan?
- 10 have you been a teacher? Since 1991.

3 Fill in what, which, who, when, where, whose or why.

- 1 "....*What*..... is your name?" "John."
- 2 "..... shirt do you want?" "The blue one, please."
- 3 "..... is your favourite colour?" "Red."
- 4 "..... are you from?" "Poland."
- 5 "..... time do you usually go to bed?" "At ten."
- 6 "..... are you crying?" "Because I've hurt my finger."
- 7 "..... are those books over there?" "Paul's."
- 8 "..... is your best friend?" "Mary."
- 9 "..... did you go on holiday last year?" "Mexico."
- 10 "..... are you leaving?" "Tomorrow."
- 11 "..... is that man over there?" "My dad."
- 12 "..... are you going to cook for dinner?" "Roast beef."
- 13 "..... do you want to leave?" "Because I'm bored."
- 14 "..... is Mr Smith?" "Our Science teacher."

4 First fill in the gaps in the questions with how old, how often, how much, how many, how long or how long ago. Then match the questions to the answers.

- 1*How much*..... does this jacket cost?
- 2 do you go to the theatre?
- 3 is your sister?
- 4 people are coming to your party?
- 5 have you been a teacher?

6 did you visit Poland?

- | | | | |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| a Since 1990. | <input type="checkbox"/> | d 14. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| b £24. | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | e Once a month. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| c Two years ago. | <input type="checkbox"/> | f Only a few. | <input type="checkbox"/> |

5 Fill in the gaps with the correct question words.



- A: 1) *What*..... are you doing?
 B: I'm making a salad for the party.
 A: 2) people are coming?
 B: About thirty.
 A: 3) time are they arriving?
 B: Seven o'clock. 4) is Steve coming?
 A: At eight o'clock. 5) are you going to put all the food?
 B: On the table in the living room.
 A: 6) are the curtains in there closed?
 B: Because I don't want Steve to see everyone when he arrives.
 A: 7) is going to open the door when Steve comes?
 B: I'll do that.

6 Ask questions to which the words in bold are the answers.

- 1 *What time/When did you finish last night?*
I finished at **9 o'clock** last night.
- 2
Yes, I enjoyed the film very much.
- 3
They play squash **three times a week**.
- 4
No, he didn't call me yesterday.
- 5
It's **Helen's** dress.
- 6
Yes, there were a lot of people at the party.

Subject/Object Questions

◆ **Subject questions** are the questions we ask when we want to find out **who** or **what** did something; that is, when we want to know the subject. These questions usually begin with the word **who** or **what**. In subject questions the verb is in the affirmative form.

◆ **Object questions** are the questions we ask when we want to know the object. These questions usually begin with the word **who** or **what**. In object questions the verb is in the interrogative form.

subject	verb	object
John	sent	a letter.



Who sent a letter?

We want to know the subject so the verb is in the affirmative form.

7 Ask questions with *who* or *what*, as in the examples.

- 1 **Somebody** has written to her.
Who has written to her?
- 2 **Something** frightened him.
What frightened him?
- 3 **Something** fell on my head.
.....
- 4 **Somebody** is talking on the phone.
.....
- 5 **Somebody** has stolen her bag.
.....
- 6 **Something** is in the garden.
.....
- 7 **Somebody** will bring the parcel.
.....
- 8 **Somebody** sent Linda flowers.
.....
- 9 **Something** is making a funny noise.
.....
- 10 **Somebody** bought his painting.
.....

subject	verb	object
John	sent	a letter.



What did John send?

We want to know the object so the verb is in the interrogative form.

8 Ask questions with *who* or *what*, as in the examples.

- 1 He found **something**.
What did he find?
- 2 She has helped **somebody**.
Who has she helped?
- 3 They'll buy **something**.
.....
- 4 He's meeting **somebody** at 5 o'clock.
.....
- 5 John is writing **something**.
.....
- 6 She saw **somebody** in the room.
.....
- 7 He heard **something**.
.....
- 8 He talked to **somebody**.
.....

9 Ask questions to which the words in bold are the answers.

- 1 ... *Who broke the window yesterday?* ...
George broke the window yesterday.
- 2 ... *What is Sarah making for the party?* ...
Sarah is making a **cake** for the party.
- 3
Bob has bought a new car.
- 4
Laura has found a **ring**.
- 5
Diana will travel abroad next year.
- 6
I saw **Tom** yesterday.
- 7
They are repairing **the roof**.
- 8
She had **fish and chips** for lunch.
- 9
Peter brought a present for the baby.
- 10
I called **Bruce** last night.

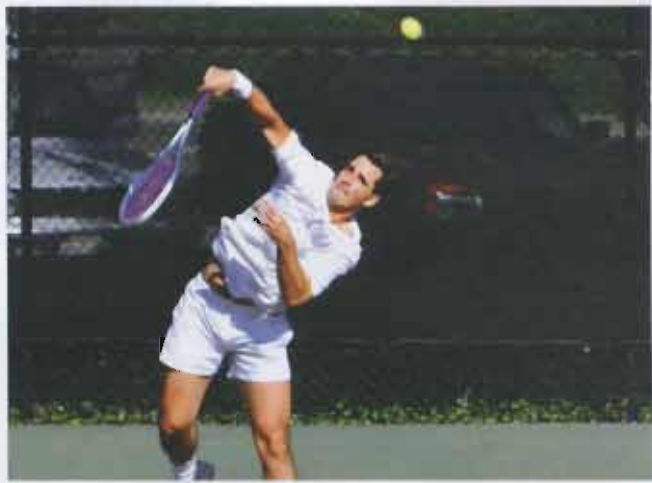
10 Ask questions to which the words in bold are the answers.



Lily lives in **Greendale**. She is a **typist**. She works in an **office in the town centre**. In her spare time, Lily likes **to do sports**. Her best friend is **Sophie**. They met **two years ago** when they were at university. They are friends **because they have the same hobbies**. They go walking together **once a week**. **Sophie** drives them to the countryside in her car. Lily and Sophie **are having a rest** at the moment. Sophie is tired today **because she went to bed very late last night**.

- 1 *Where does Lily live?*
She lives in Greendale.
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11

11 Complete the reporter's questions.



- A: 1) *What is your name?*
B: My name is Michael Simmons.
A: 2)
B: I live in Los Angeles.
A: 3)
B: I was born in New York.
A: 4)
B: I am twenty-nine years old.
A: 5)
B: I was eleven years old when I started playing.
A: 6)
B: I enjoy reading books and going to the cinema.
A: 7)
B: I am having a holiday.
A: 8)
B: I'm going to stay here for ten days.
A: Thanks for your time.

12 Choose one of the people from the pictures below. In pairs, make dialogues using the one in exercise 11 as a model.



Roger Fox,
singer



Vanessa Reed,
actress

UNIT 17

Questions

13

Write questions using the words in brackets.



- A: 1) *Do you know this man?* (you/know/this man)
 B: Yes, his name is John Smith.
 A: 2) (he/live/here)
 B: Yes, he lives across the road.
 A: 3) (house/be/his)
 B: Number 6. The house with the red front door.
 A: 4) (you/see/him/today)
 B: Yes, I have.
 A: 5) (time/be/it)
 B: 10 o'clock this morning.
 A: 6) (he/do)
 B: He got into his car and drove away.
 A: 7) (you/ever speak/him)
 B: Yes, but only a few times.
 A: Thank you very much, madam.

14

Choose the correct answer.

- 1 "....**B**... did you travel to Holland?" "Last summer."
 A Why B When C Who
 2 "..... is that man?" "My father."
 A Whose B Why C Who
 3 "..... have you lived in England?" "Five years."
 A How long B How often C How much
 4 "..... bicycle is red and black?" "Tim's."
 A Whose B Which C What

- 5 "..... do you exercise?" "Three times a week."
 A How many B How often C How much
 6 "..... did you travel to Manchester?" "By train."
 A What B Why C How
 7 "..... pens have you got?" "Ten."
 A How many B How long C How much
 8 "..... do you get up in the morning?" "At seven."
 A How B What time C Where
 9 "..... pullover do you like best? The red or the blue one?"
 A Which B What C Where
 10 "..... are you going for your summer holiday?"
 "To Italy."
 A How B Where C When
 11 "..... do you like doing in your free time?"
 "Watching TV."
 A Where B When C What
 12 "..... did you go to Jenny's last night?" "It was her birthday."
 A Why B When C How

15

Put the words into the correct order. Then write the questions in your notebook.

- 1 Where / go / yesterday / did / you?
 ...*Where did you go yesterday?*...
 2 What / are / going / the / time / party / you / to?
 3 How long / Maria / has / ill / been?
 4 When / you / Spain / are / leaving / for?
 5 Why / so / tired / are / you / today?
 6 How / have / brothers / many / got / you?
 7 What / your / is / friend's / name / best?

16

Write questions to which the words in bold are the answers.

- 1 ...*How long have you known him?*...
 I've known him **for three years**.
 2
 I go to the gym **twice a week**.
 3
 I left school **five years ago**.
 4
 I paid **twenty pounds** for that dress.
 5
 This bicycle is **John's**.

Question Tags

- ◆ Question tags are short questions at the end of a statement. We mainly use them in speech when we want to confirm something or when we want to find out if something is true or not.



They're very small,
aren't they?



Rabbits don't eat
meat, do they?



A tiger has got stripes,
hasn't it?

- ◆ We form a question tag with the auxiliary verb and the appropriate personal pronoun.

e.g. Rita can speak French, can't she?

You have spent a lot of money, haven't you?

- ◆ When the verb of the sentence is in the present simple, we form the question tag with the auxiliary verb **do, does** and the personal pronoun. When the verb is in the past simple, we form the question tag with the auxiliary verb **did** and the personal pronoun.

e.g. He likes golf, doesn't he?

Kevin went to Rome last year, didn't he?

- ◆ When the statement is positive, the question tag is negative.

e.g. She was at home, wasn't she?

He lives in a flat, doesn't he?

- ◆ When the statement is negative, the question tag is positive.

e.g. They haven't finished yet, have they?

She won't come to the party, will she?

- ◆ When the sentence contains a word with a negative meaning like **never, hardly, seldom** or **rarely**, the question tag is positive.

e.g. He is never late, is he?

They seldom go to the theatre, do they?

- ◆ Some verbs/expressions form question tags differently. Study the following examples.

I am → aren't I?

I am strong, aren't I?

Imperative → will/won't you?

Close the door, will/won't you?

Let's → shall we?

Let's go out, shall we?

Don't → will you?

Don't shout, will you?

I have (got) → haven't I?
(=possess)

She's got a sister, hasn't she?

I have → don't I?

You have a shower every day, don't you?

There is/are → isn't/aren't there? There is a man in the room, isn't there?

This/That is → isn't it?

That's Mary's coat, isn't it?

Intonation

- ◆ When we are sure of the answer and expect agreement, the voice goes down in the question tag.



e.g. This is a castle,
isn't it?



- ◆ When we aren't sure of the answer and we want information, the voice goes up in the question tag.



e.g. She isn't married, is she?



UNIT 17

Questions

17 Match the question tags to the sentences.

- | | |
|--|----------------|
| 1 You are French, ... <i>c</i> | |
| 2 Ben doesn't like fish, | a can he? |
| 3 Sharon's a good athlete, | b isn't she? |
| 4 We will go to the cinema, | c aren't you? |
| 5 You've finished your homework, | d hasn't he? |
| 6 Don and Kim went to India last year, | e won't we? |
| 7 Your brother can't swim, | f didn't they? |
| 8 Mr Brown works in a bank, | g does he? |
| 9 John passed his exam, | h haven't you? |
| 10 Your neighbour has got a dog, | i didn't he? |
| | j doesn't he? |

18 Fill in the question tags and match the answers to the questions.

- You haven't been to Europe, ...*have you?*
- You'll be at home tonight,
- She hasn't got any brothers,
- You went to London last year,
- Jane has got a new house,
- You're twenty now,
- You aren't a doctor,

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------|
| a No, but she's got two sisters. | ..... |
| b Yes, it's beautiful. | ..... |
| c No, but I've been to Australia. | ...1.... |
| d No, I'm a dentist. | ..... |
| e Yes, it was my birthday yesterday. | ..... |
| f Yes, after six o'clock. | ..... |
| g Yes, for two weeks. | ..... |

19 Fill in the correct question tag.

- Let's eat out tonight, ...*shall we?*
- Don't do that again,
- I am having lunch with Mr Ford today,
- There isn't any coffee in the pot,
- That's your new computer,
- You haven't got a pet,
- There are a lot of people on the beach,
- Switch on the lights please,

20 Fill in the question tags and then read the sentences aloud with the correct intonation.

sure	not sure	
✓		1 John doesn't live in London, ... <i>does he?</i>
	✓	2 Frank and Laura are not married,
	✓	3 We are going out for dinner,
✓		4 He won't leave his job,
✓		5 Samantha can swim,
	✓	6 They went to Sweden,
	✓	7 You aren't working tonight,
	✓	8 Harrison Ford has starred in many films,
✓		9 All children love pizza,
	✓	10 George hasn't been to China,

21 Fill in the correct question tag.



- A: This is the dress you want. 1) ...*isn't it?*
 B: Yes, it is.
 A: I think this is your size.
 B: Thank you. It costs fifty pounds, 2)?
 A: Yes, that's right.
 B: You haven't got the same dress in a different colour, 3)?
 A: No, I'm sorry, this is the only colour we've got left.
 B: Never mind. I like this colour.
 A: Would you like to try it on?
 B: Yes please. The changing room is over there, 4)?
 A: Yes. It's next to the lift.

22 Fill in the gaps with the correct word(s) from the list.

isn't it - which - haven't you - who



23 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 He has never travelled abroad, hasn't he?
- 2 Who did told you about Susan's wedding?
- 3 What car is yours? The Fiat or the Opel?
- 4 How many money did you pay?
- 5 He has lunch at home every day, hasn't he?
- 6 Don't be late tonight, won't you?
- 7 What time you are flying tomorrow?

ORAL
Activity

You have met an artist. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts given, as in the example.

SA: *When did you start painting?*

SB: *In 1989*



- 1 you/start painting?
In 1989.
- 2 you/study? In Paris.
- 3 famous painter/you/
admire? Pablo Picasso.
- 4 you/ever/meet/any famous
painters? Yes, I have.
- 5 be/your favourite paint-
ing? "The Miracle".
- 6 paintings/you sell/so
far? A lot.
- 7 you/spend/many hours/
painting every day?
Not many.
- 8 you/work on/these
days? A portrait.



You have also met a dancer. In pairs, ask and answer similar questions using the prompts given.

- 1 start dancing - 1990
- 2 learn to dance -
New York
- 3 famous dancer/you
admire - Rudolf Nureyev
- 4 favourite ballet - Swan
Lake
- 5 ever danced in London
- Yes
- 6 you do these days -
practise for a new ballet

WRITING
Activity

Imagine that you have met a person you admire a lot (e.g. a musician, an actor, an athlete, etc.). Write the questions you want to ask him/her.

.....

.....

.....

UNIT 18

Modal Verbs

Modal verbs are verbs that go before other verbs. They include **can, could, may, must, needn't, will, shall**. They do not take an -s, -ing, or -ed suffix. They cannot be used in all the tenses, for example the modal verb **must** only appears in the present simple. Modal verbs are always followed by the root form of another verb.

e.g. He **can play** basketball. (NOT: He can ~~plays~~ basketball.)

Can/Could/May



NOW

Peter is ten years old.
He **can** read and write.



THEN

When Peter was eight months old, he **couldn't** read or write, but he **could** play with his toys.

- The modal verb **can** in the present simple shows that someone has the ability to do something (see Unit 4). In the past simple it becomes **could** and shows that someone had the ability to do something in the past. We form questions by putting **can** or **could** before the subject. e.g. **Can they run?** / **Could they run?**
We form negations by putting the word **not** after **can** or **could**. e.g. **They cannot/can't run fast.** / **They could not/couldn't run fast.**

Affirmative	Negative		Interrogative
	Long form	Short form	
I could run	I could not run	I couldn't run	Could I run?
You could run	You could not run	You couldn't run	Could you run?
He could run	He could not run	He couldn't run	Could he run?
She could run	She could not run	She couldn't run	Could she run?
It could run	It could not run	It couldn't run	Could it run?
We could run	We could not run	We couldn't run	Could we run?
You could run	You could not run	You couldn't run	Could you run?
They could run	They could not run	They couldn't run	Could they run?

1 Fill in the short forms as in the example.

Long Form	Short Form
1 I could not drive.	I ... couldn't ... drive.
2 She could not write.	She write.
3 They cannot draw.	They draw.
4 He cannot come.	He come.
5 Tom could not swim.	Tom swim.

2 Mr Roberts is 65 years old. What could he do when he was young but **can't** do now? Make sentences using the prompts below as in the example.

e.g. **He could play volleyball but now he can't.**



- play volleyball
- dive
- dance all night
- eat a lot
- walk for miles
- lift heavy things

Use

We use **can**:

- a) to express ability in the present.
e.g. He **can speak** French.
- b) to make a request.
e.g. **Can you help** me with my homework, please?
- c) to ask permission.
e.g. **Can I go out**, please?

We use **could** to express ability in the past.
e.g. He **could play** football when he was young.

Short Answers

In short answers we only use **Yes** or **No**, the personal pronoun and the verb **could/couldn't**. We do not repeat the whole question.

e.g. *Could you ride a bicycle when you were eight?*
Yes, I could./No, I couldn't.

Could you ...?	Yes, I/we could. No, I/we couldn't.
Could he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it could. No, he/she/it couldn't.
Could they ...?	Yes, they could. No, they couldn't.

3

What does can/could express in the sentences below: ability, request, asking permission or ability in the past?

- 1 I looked for my bag, but I **couldn't** find it. *ability in the past*
- 2 **Can** I watch the late film tonight, Mum?
- 3 **Can** you bring me a glass of water, please?
- 4 Philip **can't** swim very well, but he's taking lessons.
- 5 Terry **couldn't** cross the street because there was a lot of traffic.
- 6 Susan **can't** walk because she has broken her leg.

4

Fill in the gaps with can, can't, could or couldn't.

- 1 Sarah is three years old. She *...can't...* write.
- 2 Peter is nineteen. He drive a car.
- 3 Mr Thompson is 70 years old. He see very well so he wears glasses.
- 4 When I was five years old, I only count to ten.
- 5 When Kate was two, she read a newspaper.
- 6 you answer the phone, please?
- 7 It was cold yesterday so we go out.
- 8 I walk when I broke my leg.
- 9 I take this pencil, please?
- 10 you sing when you were a small child?



Look at the pictures. In pairs, ask prompts below as in the example.

SA: *Could you play the piano when you were six?*
SB: *Yes, I could./No, I couldn't.*

1  play/piano	5  use/computer
2  ride/bicycle	6  paint/picture
3  make/spaghetti	7  do/jigsaw puzzle
4  play/cards	8  take/photographs

UNIT 18

Modal Verbs

Can/May

We use **can** and **may** to ask permission to do something. **May** is more formal than **can** and we use it when we do not know the other person very well.



May I show you something, Sir?
(formal situation)



Can I play with my friends after school, Dad?
(informal situation)

6 Fill in Can or May.



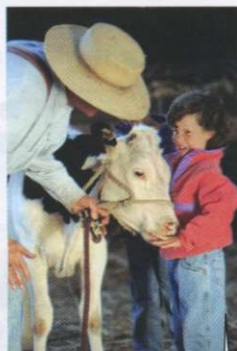
1 ...**Can**... I come fishing with you, Dad?



2 I introduce you to Mrs Lee?



3 I suggest something?



4 I play with it, Grandpa?

7 Read the situations. Make questions with May I ... or Can I ..., as in the example.

- You want to borrow your friend's camera. What do you say to him?
Can I borrow your camera, please?
- You want to use the phone in your boss's office. What do you say to him?
.....
- You want to invite some friends to dinner. What do you say to your mother?
.....
- You want to speak to your boss. What do you say to him?
.....
- You and your brother/sister want to play in the garden. What do you say to your father?
.....
- You and a friend want to go to Helen's party. What do you say to your parents?
.....

8 Choose the correct answer.

- I ...**C**... climb up a ladder at the age of three.
A may B can C couldn't
- John play the piano very well now.
A may B can C could
- Mr Green run very fast when he was young.
A may B can C could
- you post this letter for me, please?
A May B Can C Can't
- I spell my name when I was four years old.
A may B can't C couldn't
- Simon speak Spanish?
A May B Can C Could
- Cindy tell the time when she was five.
A could B can C may
- I have something to eat, please?
A Can B Can't C Couldn't
- Diana swim when she was seven.
A can B couldn't C can't

Must/Mustn't/Needn't



Mother: You **must be** careful, Rick. You **mustn't play** with knives.
 Rick: **Must we go** to the doctor, mum?
 Mother: No, we **needn't go** to the doctor. You'll be all right.

◆ In the present simple the modal verb **must** shows that it is necessary for someone to do something. It expresses necessity. It is followed by the root form of the verb. We form questions by putting **must** before the subject. e.g. **Must I go now?** We form negations by putting the word **not** after **must**. e.g. **You must not/mustn't talk in class.** **Mustn't** shows that it is wrong to do something. It expresses prohibition.

The modal verb **needn't** shows that it isn't necessary to do something. It expresses a lack of necessity. It is followed by the root form of the verb. e.g. **You needn't buy any stamps. I've got some.**

Affirmative	Negative		Interrogative
	Long form	Short form	
I must leave	I must not leave	I mustn't leave	Must I leave?
You must leave	You must not leave	You mustn't leave	Must you leave?
He must leave	He must not leave	He mustn't leave	Must he leave?
She must leave	She must not leave	She mustn't leave	Must she leave?
It must leave	It must not leave	It mustn't leave	Must it leave?
We must leave	We must not leave	We mustn't leave	Must we leave?
You must leave	You must not leave	You mustn't leave	Must you leave?
They must leave	They must not leave	They mustn't leave	Must they leave?

9 Fill in the short forms as in the example.

Long Form	Short Form
1 They must not stay here.	They mustn't stay here.
2 You must not talk.	You talk.
3 He must not shout.	He shout.
4 She must not run.	She run.
5 We must not move.	We move.

10 In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below as in the example.

SA: *Must we write a composition?*
 SB: *No, you needn't write a composition.*

- | | |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 write a composition? | 5 buy her a present? |
| 2 pay for it now? | 6 call him now? |
| 3 stay here? | 7 finish the exercise now? |
| 4 go to the gym? | |

UNIT 18 Modal Verbs

Use

- ◆ We use **must**:
 - a) to express obligation
e.g. *I must do my homework.*
 - b) for rules e.g. *You must buy a ticket.*
 - c) to give advice e.g. *You must see a doctor.*
- ◆ **Mustn't** means "it is forbidden" or "it isn't right".
e.g. *You mustn't park here. (=It is forbidden to park here, it is against the rules.)*
- ◆ **Needn't** means "it isn't necessary to do something"
e.g. *You needn't leave now. (=It isn't necessary for you to leave now.)*

When we want to know if it is necessary to do something, we ask questions with **must**. The negative answer is **needn't**, not **mustn't**.

Study these examples:

- **Must I type** all these letters?
- No, you **needn't type** all of them. NOT: You ~~mustn't~~ type them. (It is not forbidden to type them. It just isn't necessary to do it.)
- You **mustn't smoke** in this room. (It is forbidden.)

11 Fill in **must**, **mustn't** or **needn't**, as in the example.



1 You **must** drink your milk.



2 You do the washing-up. I'll do it.



3 You throw litter in the street.



4 I iron all these clothes.



5 You buy any more bread. We've got a lot.



6 I'm sorry, you take photographs inside the museum, Sir.

12 Fill in **must** or **mustn't**.

- 1 I haven't got any money. I **must** go to the bank.
- 2 It's raining. You go out without your umbrella.
- 3 The road is busy. You look carefully before you cross it.
- 4 You play football in the house, Jack.
- 5 My tooth hurts. I go to the dentist's.

13 Fill in **mustn't** or **needn't**.

- 1 You **mustn't** play with matches. It's dangerous.
- 2 You talk loudly. The baby is sleeping.
- 3 I go to the bank. I've got some money.
- 4 We stay out late. We have to get up early tomorrow.
- 5 You feed the dog. I'll do it.
- 6 I forget to buy some milk. There isn't any left.
- 7 You talk during the exam.
- 8 You phone Julia. She's coming here later.
- 9 You take your umbrella. It's stopped raining.
- 10 You park here. There's a "No Parking" sign.
- 11 You come with me. I can go alone.
- 12 You lose the key. I haven't got another.
- 13 You tell Sonia. It's a secret.
- 14 You buy a paper. You can read mine.
- 15 You go by taxi. I can give you a lift.

14 Fill in *must*, *mustn't* or *needn't*.



Boss: Have you typed those letters yet?
 Secretary: No, I haven't finished. 1) ...**Must**...I type them all this morning?
 Boss: Yes, you 2) I'm afraid.
 Secretary: Very well, Sir. 3) I also photocopy them?
 Boss: No, you 4) Eric can do that. Just ask him.
 Secretary: OK, I'll do that. Oh, Sir. You've got an appointment with Mr Lee at 6 o'clock. It's almost 5.30. You 5) be late.
 Boss: Oh, dear! I forgot. I'll go now.
 Secretary: Do you want me to call your wife and tell her that you'll be late?
 Boss: No, you 6) do that. I'll call her.

15 Fill in the gaps with *must*, *mustn't* or *needn't*, and one of the verbs from the list.

paint - buy - forget - phone - be - touch - go - finish

- I ...**must phone**... Alan. I haven't spoken to him for a long time.
- You the oven. It's very hot.
- You your work now. You can do it tomorrow.
- We to post the letters. They're very important.
- We the living room. The walls are very dirty.
- You shopping today. We've got a lot of food.
- Tom late for work. The boss will be angry.
- You any new clothes. You've got enough.

16 Read the situations and make sentences with *must*, *mustn't* or *needn't*, as in the example.

- You want to play football outside, but you live near a busy road. What does your father say?
**You mustn't play near the busy road.**.....
- You threw a stone and it broke the kitchen window. What does your mother say?

- Tomorrow is Sunday. You ask if you must get up early. What does your mother say?

- Your father asks if you need help with your project, but you've finished it. What do you say?

- You haven't finished your homework, but you want to go out with your friends. What does your father say?

17 What *must* or *mustn't* you do when you are in a library? Look at the Library Rules and make sentences with *must* or *mustn't*.

Library Rules

- Don't make any noise.
- Be quiet.
- Don't eat or drink.
- Be careful with the books.
- Don't leave books on the tables when you leave.
- Put the books back in the right place.



e.g. **You mustn't make any noise.**

18 Underline the correct word.

- I must/mustn't go to school every day.
- Can/Cannot** I borrow your pen, please?
- You **must/mustn't** go out alone at night.
- I **can/can't** show you where the office is. It's next to my house.
- Can/Must** Susan come and play with me ?
- I **can/can't** go out tonight. I'm busy.

UNIT 18 Modal Verbs

Shall/Will

- ◆ We use the modal verb **shall** to express an offer. e.g. *Shall I help you clean the house?*
- ◆ We use the modal verb **will** to ask someone to do something for us (request). e.g. *Will you help me fix the car, please?*



Mum, **shall I help you** water the flowers? (offer)



Mum, **will you buy me this** pair of shorts? (request)

19 Fill in shall or will.

- "You look tired. ...*Shall*... I do the cooking tonight?" "Oh, yes, please!"
- "I can't do this exercise. you help me do it, Pat?" "Yes, of course."
- "This room is in a mess! I clean it?" "Yes, please."
- "I have a headache. you bring me an aspirin, please?" "Yes, I'll get one for you."
- "The phone is ringing. I answer it for you?" "No thanks. I'll get it."
- "I'm busy. you pick up the children from school?" "Yes, certainly."
- "I'm thirsty. you get me a glass of water, please?" "Yes, of course."
- "The postman has just delivered the mail. I open it for you?" "No, it's alright. I'll do it."

20

Helen is giving a party. Some friends have come to help her. **Look at the prompts and make sentences using shall, as in the example.**

e.g. *Shall I send the invitations for you?*



- send the invitations
- decorate the living room
- make the cake
- do the cooking

The day after the party the house is in a mess. Helen is asking her friends to help her. **Look at the prompts and make sentences using will, as in the example.**

e.g. *Will you put the decorations away, please?*

- put the decorations away



- do the washing-up



- help me move the sofa



- put the CDs away



21

Read the situations and make sentences using will or shall.

- The car needs washing. Your father is busy. What does he say to you? ...*Will you wash the car, please?*...
- Your classroom is cold. Your teacher wants you to close the window. What does he/she say to you?
- Your grandmother wants to read the newspaper but she can't read without her glasses. What do you say to her?
- You have given your friend some coffee. She tells you it tastes bitter. What do you say to her?
- You must post some letters but you haven't got the time. What do you say to your brother/sister?

22

Fill in the gaps with *mustn't*, *may*, *will* or *must*.



23

Correct the mistakes.

- 1 I must having a bath.
- 2 You can't to go out tonight.
- 3 Shall you water the flowers this afternoon?
- 4 He must studies hard for his exams.
- 5 She must helping her mother today.
- 6 They needn't to stay here any more.
- 7 I can't do puzzles when I was four years old.

ORAL Activity

You want to go camping. Look at the pictures and say what somebody *must/mustn't/needn't* do.

e.g. *You must take medicine with you.*



1 take/medicine



2 take/tent



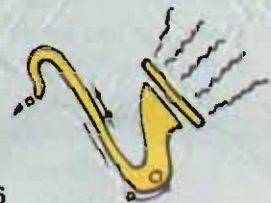
3 cook/meals



4 throw/litter



5 take/formal clothes



6 make/noise after 11 pm

WRITING Activity

Now write about the things somebody *must/mustn't/needn't* do when they go camping. Add your own ideas, too.

When you go camping you *must* take medicine with you. You

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

UNIT 19

Infinitive/The "-ing form"/Too-Enough

The Infinitive



He can **ride** a bicycle.



He wants **to be** a golfer.

- ◆ The **infinitive** is the root form of the verb. There are two kinds of infinitive:
 - a) the **to - infinitive** which is the root form of the verb with **to**. e.g. *I want to go now.*
 - b) the **bare infinitive** which is the root form of the verb without **to**. e.g. *You must go now.*

We use to - infinitives:

- ◆ after verbs such as: **want, agree, ask, help, hope, tell, decide, manage, offer, invite, promise, try**, etc. e.g. *I want to see a film tonight.*
- ◆ after some verbs such as **know, decide**, etc. when there is a **question word** (who, what, where, how, etc.) after them. e.g. *I don't know what to do.*
- ◆ after the words **too** and **enough**. e.g. *He is too young to drive a car. He isn't old enough to drive a car.*
- ◆ to express purpose, that is, the reason why somebody does something. e.g. *He is going to the bank to get some money.*

We use bare infinitive:

- ◆ after **modal verbs** (can, could, must, needn't, shall, will, may, etc). e.g. *He can't read.*
- ◆ after the verbs **let** and **make**. e.g. *My parents don't let me stay out late. Mother made me clean my room yesterday.*

1 Use the prompts to make sentences as in the example.

- 1 Tom likes planes. He / a pilot.
Tom likes planes. He wants to be a pilot.
- 2 Susan likes animals. She / a vet.
- 3 Jerry likes films. He / an actor.
- 4 Peter likes the sea. He / a sailor.
- 5 Sarah likes books. She / a writer.
- 6 They like football. They / footballers.

2 Peggy went to all these places yesterday. Why did she go there? Look at the pictures and use the prompts to make sentences as in the example. e.g. *Peggy went to the train station to catch a train.*



1 train station/catch/train



2 baker's/buy/bread



3 florist's/order/flowers



4 library/borrow/books



5 park/relax



6 swimming pool/swim

Infinitive/The "-ing form"/Too-Enough

3 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct infinitive form.

- 1 You must ...*pay*... (pay) the phone bill.
- 2 He asked her (marry) him.
- 3 He couldn't (do) the exercises at school yesterday.
- 4 I decided (go) to the cinema.
- 5 Dad makes me (wash) the car every Sunday.
- 6 My parents always let me (watch) the late film on Saturdays.
- 7 I hope (study) English at university.
- 8 He wanted (take) a photograph.
- 9 He won't (move) to Italy next year.
- 10 She offered (make) the coffee.

4 Make sentences using the prompts as in the example.

- 1 Can Bill lift that box? (heavy/light)
...*No, it's too heavy./No, it isn't light enough.* ...
- 2 Can Peter buy that car? (expensive/cheap)
- 3 Can Emily reach that shelf? (high/low)
- 4 Can Richard drink that coffee? (bitter/sweet)
- 5 Can Susan wear that sweater? (small/big)
- 6 Can Emma do that exercise? (difficult/easy)

5 Fill in the gaps with enough and the word in brackets in the right order.

- 1 I haven't got ...*enough sugar*... (sugar) to make a cake.
- 2 The water isn't (clean) to swim in.
- 3 The shelves aren't (strong) to put the books on.
- 4 He hasn't got (milk) to put in his tea.
- 5 There aren't (players) to make a team.
- 6 She isn't (fast) to win the race.

Too - Enough

◆ **Too** goes **before** adjectives or adverbs. It shows that something is more than enough/necessary or wanted. It has a negative implication.
Too + adjective/adverb is followed by **to - infinitive**.



He is **too young** to talk on the phone. (=He is so young that he can't talk on the phone.)

e.g. He was **too late** to catch the bus. (=He was so late that he didn't catch the bus. That is, he missed it.)

◆ **Enough** goes **before** nouns but **after** adjectives or adverbs. It shows that there is as much of something as is wanted. That is, the right amount. It has a positive implication and is followed by **to - infinitive**.

e.g. We've got **enough money** to eat out. (=We can eat out.)



He is **strong enough** to climb up a tree. (=He can climb up a tree.)

Study these examples:

- 1) She **is too young** to go out alone.
(=She can't go out alone.)
- 2) She **isn't old enough** to go out alone.
(=She can't go out alone.)
~~NOT: She isn't too old to go out alone.~~
- 3) She **is old enough** to go out alone.
(=She can go out alone.)

6 Fill in the gaps with too or enough and the word in brackets in the right order.

- 1 I can't see properly. It's ...*too dark*... (dark).
- 2 Can you put more ice in my water, please? It isn't (cold).
- 3 I threw away the jacket. It was (old).
- 4 I can't run fast. I'm not (fit).
- 5 You can't wear that shirt. It's (small).
- 6 I won't sunbathe today. It isn't (hot).

The -ing form



They like **skiing**.
Skiing is their favourite sport.

◆ The **-ing form** is the verb form with the -ing suffix. e.g. I like **swimming**.

We use the -ing form:

- ◆ as a noun. e.g. **Exercising** is good for your health.
- ◆ after the verbs **like, dislike, love, hate, enjoy, prefer, stop, finish, start, begin**. e.g. She **stopped talking**.
- ◆ after **prepositions**. e.g. I'm thinking **of going** to Italy.
- ◆ after the verb **go** when we talk about activities. e.g. They **went shopping** yesterday.

NOTE: **like/love + -ing form** = I enjoy doing something in general.

e.g. I **love travelling**. (=I enjoy travelling in general.)

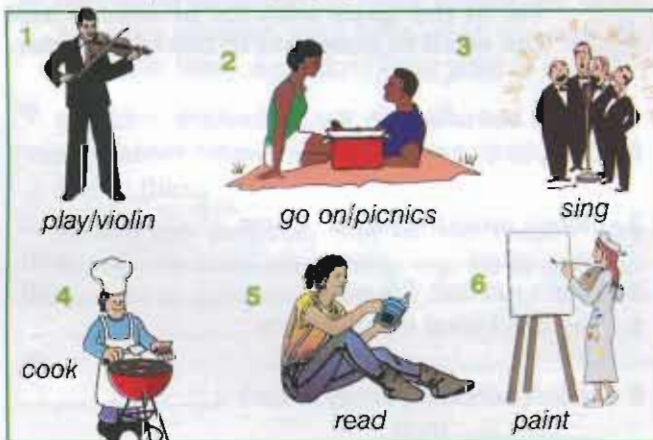
would like/would love + to - infinitive = I want to do something.

e.g. I **would like to travel** to China one day. (=I want to travel to China one day.)

7

Look at the pictures and make sentences using the prompts as in the example.

e.g. He likes **playing the violin**.



8

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct **infinitive form** or the **-ing form**.

- 1 Juliet enjoys ...**playing**... (play) the guitar.
- 2 He started (drive) when he was 17 years old.
- 3 I wanted (take) my dog to the park yesterday.
- 4 I can't (travel) to Australia alone.
- 5 He likes (do) jigsaw puzzles.
- 6 Philip agreed (paint) the garden fence.
- 7 I finished (eat) breakfast an hour ago.
- 8 Fiona hopes (buy) a new car soon.
- 9 Can Sam (do) a jigsaw puzzle?
- 10 I put the shopping away before (cook) dinner.

Infinitive/The "-ing form"/Too-Enough

9 Put the verbs in brackets into the infinitive form or the -ing form.



- A: Where are you going? It's too cold **1)** ...to go... (go) out today.
 B: I must **2)** (buy) some stamps because I want **3)** (post) some letters. I'll wear my coat so I'll be warm enough.
 A: I will **4)** (come) with you.
 B: All right. I also want **5)** (visit) Aunt Milly this morning, but I won't **6)** (stay) too long.
 A: Good. I like **7)** (talk) to her and she enjoys **8)** (tell) us stories about her past.
 B: Oh no, I forgot! Aunt Milly goes **9)** (shop) every Saturday morning.
 A: It doesn't matter. We like **10)** (buy) things too, so we can **11)** (go) with her.
 B: That's a good idea. I would like **12)** (do) that. I've got enough time before I start work this afternoon.

10 Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs from the list in the correct infinitive form or the -ing form.

wear, help, buy, become, be, play, go, take, say, watch, cook, speak

- 1 I love animals. I'm thinking of ...*becoming*... a vet.
 2 Steve likes sunglasses, even in winter.
 3 Would you like television?
 4 Pamela asked me her with her homework.
 5 You must the dog for a walk every day.
 6 Paul left without goodbye last night.
 7 I went to the butcher's some meat for dinner.
 8 Fred enjoys He wants to be a chef.

- 9 What shall we do today? I would love for a walk.
 10 I want an astronaut when I grow up.
 11 "Why do you want to go to the park?" "I want..... with my friends."
 12 James is very clever. He can four languages.

11 First read the four short dialogues and put the verbs in brackets into the infinitive or the -ing form. Then, cover the dialogues and act them out.



- A: What do you want **1)** ...to do... (do) today?
 B: I'm thinking of **2)** (go) to the park for a picnic. Do you want **3)** (come)?
 A: Yes, please. It's a lovely day for a picnic.



- A: I enjoy **4)** (go) on picnics, don't you, Frank?
 B: Yes, and I love **5)** (sit) in the park.
 A: What's this? Oh no, it has started **6)** (rain).
 B: Let's **7)** (put) everything back in the car.



- A: What shall we **8)** (do) now?
 B: Would you like **9)** (see) a film?
 A: Not really. How about **10)** (spend) the evening at my house?



- A: I'll **11)** (make) us some tea.
 B: Thank you, I would **12)** (love) some. What a day!

Too Many/Too Much

Too many (=more than wanted/enough) goes with plural countable nouns. e.g. *You eat too many sweets.* (=You eat more sweets than necessary.) **Too much** (=more than wanted/enough) goes with uncountable nouns. e.g. *You spend too much time talking on the phone.* (=You spend more time talking on the phone than necessary.)

12

Ben's mother is talking to him because she isn't happy with him. Look at the pictures and make sentences with *too many*, *too much* or *not enough*, as in the examples.

e.g. (X) *You eat too many hamburgers.*
(✓) *You don't eat enough vegetables.*

1 eat/hamburgers X 2 eat/vegetables ✓

3 eat/chocolate X 4 drink/Coke X 5 do/homework ✓

6 drink/milk ✓ 7 watch/horror films X 8 take/exercise ✓

9 spend/money X 10 read/comics X

13

Underline the correct word.

- 1 She came in without to knock/knock/knocking on the door.
- 2 I don't know what do/doing/to do with that old washing machine.
- 3 I hate to live/live/living in the city.
- 4 My brother is good at to mend/mend/mending cars.
- 5 She managed to find/finding/find a job.
- 6 I decided to wash/wash/washing the car yesterday.
- 7 My parents don't let me to stay/stay/staying out late at night.
- 8 We will to help/help/helping you with the housework.
- 9 I told her to finish/finish/finishing the letter.
- 10 Maria would like go/going/to go to the theatre tonight.
- 11 They agreed come/to come/coming to my party.
- 12 Sam prefers reading/read/to read to watching TV.
- 13 Helen tried open/opening/to open the door but she couldn't.
- 14 Peter hasn't decided where going/to go/go for his holidays yet.

14

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct infinitive form or the -ing form.

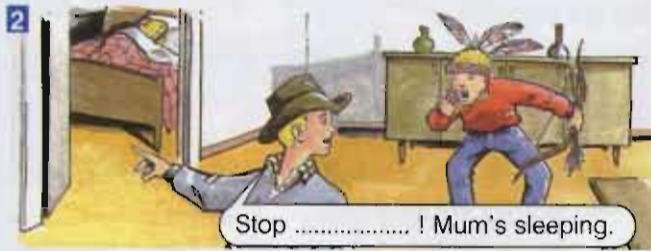


Dennis and Oscar are twins. They are the same age but they like (1) ...doing... (do) different things. Dennis loves (2) (take) risks. He enjoys (3) (dive) and he goes motor (4) (race) every week. He can (5) (fly) an aeroplane and he wants (6)

(become) a stunt man. On the other hand, Oscar likes (7) (play) tennis and enjoys (8) (read). He goes (9) (swim) every day. He can (10) (cook) and he would like (11) (learn) a foreign language. Dennis and Oscar love (12) (tell) each other about their hobbies.

15 Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs from the list in the correct infinitive form or the -ing form.

shout - come - do - pay - go - watch





16 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 I would like going to America next year.
- 2 He enjoys to dance.
- 3 "Why did you go to the library?" "Borrowing a book."
- 4 I must to wash my hair tonight.
- 5 Do you know how skiing?
- 6 She goes to run every Thursday evening.
- 7 Have you got too time to come shopping with me?
- 8 I'm too tall to reach the top cupboard.
- 9 You are short enough to touch the ceiling.
- 10 He will leaving school when he's eighteen.

ORAL Activity

Read about Andrew and Diana. Then in pairs ask and answer questions as in the example.

e.g. SA: *What does Andrew like doing?*
 SB: *He likes making model ships.*

	ANDREW 	DIANA 
LIKE:	make model ships	meet new people
DISLIKE:	study Maths	stay at home
WANT TO BE:	a captain	a business-woman
WOULD LIKE:	have his own ship	have her own company
HOPE:	sail to America	be rich and successful

Now complete the table below about you. Ask questions to find out information about your partner as in the example. Finally, look at your notes and talk about you and your partner.

e.g. SA: *What do you like doing?*
 SB: *I like*

	YOU	YOUR PARTNER
LIKE:		
DISLIKE:		
WANT TO BE:		
WOULD LIKE:		
HOPE:		

WRITING Activity

Look at the notes about Andrew and Diana again and write a short paragraph about each person. Begin like this:

Andrew is a friend of mine. He likes making model ships, but he dislikes

Diana is also a friend of mine. She likes meeting new people, but she dislikes

UNIT 20

Both/Neither-All/None



Both of them are students.
Neither of them is old or Neither of them are old.
They can both play a musical instrument.



All of them are boys.
None of them is a girl or None of them are girls.
They are all standing.

- ◆ **Both of + noun/object pronoun** refers to **two** people, things, animals, etc. It has a positive meaning and takes a **plural verb**. e.g. *Both of the men/of them are rich* or *They are both rich*.
- ◆ **Neither of + noun/object pronoun** refers to **two** people, things, animals, etc. It has a negative meaning and can take either a **singular** or **plural verb**. e.g. *Neither of them has got/have got a car*.
- ◆ **All of + noun/object pronoun** refers to **more than two** people, things, animals, etc. It has a positive meaning and takes a **plural verb**. e.g. *All of them are British* or *They are all British*.
- ◆ **None of + noun/object pronoun** refers to **more than two** people, things, animals, etc. It has a negative meaning and can take either a **singular** or **plural verb**. e.g. *None of them is/are tall*.
- ◆ The words **both** and **all** can go:
 - a) after the auxiliary verb or at the beginning of the sentence. e.g. *They can both sing*. or *Both of them can sing*.
 - b) before the main verb or at the beginning of the sentence. e.g. *They all came to the party*. or *All of them came to the party*.
- ◆ The words **neither** and **none** are always followed by a verb in the affirmative form. e.g. *Neither of them is Italian.* (NOT: ~~*Neither of them isn't Italian.*~~)
None of them speak Chinese. (NOT: ~~*None of them don't speak Chinese.*~~)

1 Look at the pictures and the prompts. Make sentences as in the examples.

- e.g. 1 *Both of them are sprinters.*
Neither of them is a footballer/are footballers.
 2 *All of them are chicks.*
None of them is a duckling/are ducklings.



2 Answer these questions using both/ all/neither/none of them, as in the examples.

- 1 Are red and green colours?
Yes, both of them are colours.
- 2 Are Harrison Ford, Brad Pitt and Tom Cruise singers?
No, none of them is a singer/are singers.
- 3 Are cows, goats and pigs wild animals?

- 4 Are England, Turkey and Italy countries?

- 5 Are snakes, elephants and parrots farm animals?

- 6 Are "Monopoly" and "Scrabble" sports?

3 Fill in the gaps with *both, neither, all or none*.



- 1 ...*All*... of them are sitting round the table.
- 2 of them is standing.
- 3 They are holding pens.
- 4 of them is smoking.
- 5 The men have got short hair.
- 6 Alex and Tim are wearing glasses.
- 7 They have got papers in front of them.
- 8 Rea and Julie are wearing suits.
- 9 of them have got a glass of water in front of them.
- 10 of the women is wearing a scarf.

4 Fill in the gaps with *both, all, neither or none* and *of* where necessary.

- 1 "Are Peggy and Sue studying for their exams?"
"...Yes. *Both of*... them are studying really hard."
- 2 "What are Eric, Tom and Peter doing?"
"..... them are watching TV."
- 3 "Do Sylvia and Rea like fish?"
"No,them likes fish."
- 4 "Have Paul, Bob and Roy done their homework?"
"Yes, they have finished it."
- 5 "Will Tom, Sam and Keith come to the zoo with us?" "No, them wants to come."
- 6 "Are your parents going out tonight?"
"Yes. Actually, they are going to Grandma's birthday party."
- 7 "Where are Linda and Lucy?"
"They are at the hairdresser's."

- 8 "Did George, John and Mike enjoy the play?"
"No, them liked it."
- 9 "Are the Smiths and the Browns coming to our party?"
"Yes, they have accepted the invitation."
- 10 "Are your twin sisters married?"
"No, them is."

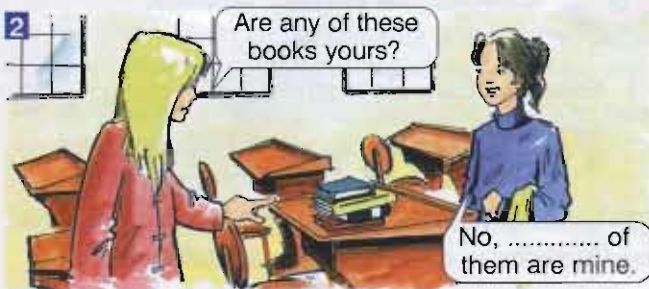
5 Choose the correct answer.

- 1 Brian and Gary are brothers. ...*B*... of them enjoy swimming.
A All B Both C None
- 2 I have got two aunts. of them lives near me.
A Neither B All C Both
- 3 Diana baked three cakes. of them was a chocolate cake.
A All B Neither C None
- 4 Kim, Samantha and Alice are friends. of them are English.
A Both B Neither C All
- 5 Claire and Dan went on holiday. of them had fun.
A None B All C Both
- 6 Dave has got lots of pets. of them is a dog.
A None B All C Neither
- 7 Jill has got three suitcases. of them are big.
A Both B Neither C All
- 8 Cathy has got two sisters. of them is older than her.
A Neither B None C Both
- 9 I watched three films last week. of them was a comedy.
A All B None C Both
- 10 I had four hats but I lost of them.
A none B both C all

UNIT 20

Both/Neither-All/None

6 Fill in the gaps with *both*, *all*, *neither* or *none*.



7 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 I have got lots of friends. Neither of them has got blonde hair.
- 2 Steven has got two cars. All of them are red.
- 3 My sister and I are short. Both of us is tall.
- 4 There are twelve people in the room. Both of them are girls.
- 5 Look at those babies! Neither of them aren't crying.
- 6 I have got two brothers. None of them are firemen.
- 7 Lucy has got two cats. All of them is black.
- 8 The three boys are happy. Neither of them is sad.

ORAL Activity

Look at the table below. In pairs, ask questions and answer using *both/neither*, as in the example.

e.g. SA: *How old are they?*
 SB: *They are both ten years old. OR Both of them are ten years old.*



	Mary	Peter
How old/they?	10	10
they/like school?	Yes	Yes
they/watch TV?	Yes	Yes
they/play football?	No	No
they/have got a pet?	No	No
they/have got a guitar?	Yes	Yes
they/like swimming?	No	No
they/have got a bicycle?	Yes	Yes
they/like vegetables?	No	No

WRITING Activity

Look at the oral activity and write about Mary and Peter. Begin like this:

Mary and Peter are good friends. They are both ten years old.

1 Fill in *than*, *of* or *in*.

- Charles is the tallest student ...*in*... the class.
- James' house is bigger mine.
- The Nile is the longest river the world.
- Mr Beale is older Mr Clark.
- This car is the most expensive all.
- It is colder today it was yesterday.
- Who do you think is the most beautiful woman the world?
- I think chemistry is the hardest subject all.
- Jennifer's hair is longer yours.
- John is the tallest student all.

2 Fill in the gaps with the comparative or superlative form of the adjectives in brackets.



- The blue car is ...*faster than*... (fast) the green car.
- The red car is (fast) all.
- The green car is (cheap) all.
- The red car is (expensive) the blue car.
- The red car is (expensive) all.
- The green car is (old) the blue car.
- The blue car is (comfortable) the green car.
- The green car is (economical) the red car.

3 Underline the correct word.

- She looked at me angry/angrily this morning.
- He got dressed quick/quickly as he was late.
- The fish had a strong/strongly smell.

- She spoke to her friend soft/softly.
- This salad tastes good/well.
- That chair is quite comfortable/comfortably to sit on.
- He sounded very unhappy/unhappily on the phone.
- I feel sad/sadly today.
- She is a very clever/cleverly student.
- She crossed the road safe/safely.

4 Fill in the gaps with the correct question word(s).

- "...*Where*... did you go last night?" "To the cinema."
- "..... pets have you got?" "Three. Two goldfish and a cat."
- "..... time do you usually go to bed?" "At 11 o'clock."
- "..... did you pay for that coat?" "£80."
- "..... ago did you visit France?" "Two years ago."
- "..... is that girl?" "My sister."
- "..... did you get to work?" "On foot."
- "..... dog is that?" "Mine."
- "..... blouse are you going to wear?" "The red one."
- "..... did you go to the supermarket?" "To buy some milk."

5 Write questions to which the words in bold are the answers.

- I'm having lunch **at the office** today.
...*Where are you having lunch today?*...
- Alan** has bought a present for Janet.
.....
- This jacket is **Anna's**.
.....
- I have worked for this company **for six years**.
.....
- We go shopping **once a week**.
.....
- Philip** will cook lunch on Sunday.
.....
- Peter paid **£15,000** for his new car.
.....
- Susan bought a **red skirt** yesterday.
.....

Revision 4 (Units 1 - 20)

- 9 He is happy **because he has won the lottery.**
.....
- 10 The party will start at **9 o'clock.**
.....

6 Choose the correct answer.

- 1 I **...A...** go to the bakery to buy some bread because we haven't got any.
A must B could C needn't
- 2 You get up early tomorrow because I'll take the children to school.
A shall B needn't C could
- 3 I use your telephone, sir?
A Needn't B May C Shall
- 4 Steven is a pilot. He fly an aeroplane.
A couldn't B may C can
- 5 You touch that knife. It's very sharp.
A must B mustn't C needn't
- 6 I study for my exams.
A must B may C mustn't
- 7 I borrow the dictionary, please?
A Can B Must C Shall
- 8 Simon walk when he was a year old.
A couldn't B can't C can
- 9 you help me make the bed, please?
A Will B Shall C May
- 10 I water the flowers for you, Carol?
A Will B Shall C Needn't

7 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the infinitive or the -ing form.

- 1 I want **...to go...** (go) swimming today.
- 2 He is old enough (learn) how to drive.
- 3 She promised (keep) my secret.
- 4 May I (interrupt) you for a moment?
- 5 (Drink) milk is good for your health.
- 6 I hate (eat) spinach.

- 7 Ann enjoys (talk) to her friends on the phone.
- 8 Shall I (call) Peter for you?
- 9 Have you finished (do) your homework?
- 10 I'm tired of (listen) to your complaints.
- 11 I prefer (wake up) early in the morning.
- 12 Peter managed (build) a boat on his own.
- 13 Helen hopes (pass) the test this time.
- 14 They stopped (play) music because it was very late.
- 15 He is going to the grocer's (buy) some milk and eggs.

8 Fill in the gaps with *both, all, neither, none* and *of* where necessary.



- 1 "Do Peggy and her husband often play tennis?"
"Yes. They **...both...** play tennis every weekend."
- 2 "Do your parents work?" "Yes. they have got great jobs."
- 3 "Are Eric and his friends coming to your party tomorrow night?" "No. Unfortunately, they are coming."
- 4 "Have Paul and Robert paid this month's rent?"
"No. them has."
- 5 She's got three sisters, but them works.
- 6 "Where are John and Bob?" "They have gone to the cinema."
- 7 "Have Paula and her sisters moved abroad?"
"Yes. They live in different countries now."

Irregular Verbs

Infinitive	Past	Past Participle	Infinitive	Past	Past Participle
be	was	been	leave	left	left
bear	bore	born(e)	lend	lent	lent
beat	beat	beaten	let	let	let
become	became	become	light	lit	lit
begin	began	begun	lose	lost	lost
bite	bit	bitten	make	made	made
blow	blew	blown	mean	meant	meant
break	broke	broken	meet	met	met
bring	brought	brought	pay	paid	paid
build	built	built	put	put	put
burn	burnt (burned)	burnt (burned)	read	read	read
burst	burst	burst	ride	rode	ridden
buy	bought	bought	ring	rang	rung
can	could	(been able to)	rise	rose	risen
catch	caught	caught	run	ran	run
choose	chose	chosen	say	said	said
come	came	come	see	saw	seen
cost	cost	cost	sell	sold	sold
cut	cut	cut	send	sent	sent
deal	dealt	dealt	set	set	set
dig	dug	dug	sew	sewed	sewn
do	did	done	shake	shook	shaken
draw	drew	drawn	shine	shone	shone
dream	dreamt (dreamed)	dreamt (dreamed)	shoot	shot	shot
drink	drank	drunk	show	showed	shown
drive	drove	driven	shut	shut	shut
eat	ate	eaten	sing	sang	sung
fall	fell	fallen	sit	sat	sat
feed	fed	fed	sleep	slept	slept
feel	felt	felt	smell	smelt (smelled)	smelt (smelled)
fight	fought	fought	speak	spoke	spoken
find	found	found	spell	spelt (spelled)	spelt (spelled)
fly	flew	flown	spend	spent	spent
forbid	forbade	forbidden	stand	stood	stood
forget	forgot	forgotten	steal	stole	stolen
forgive	forgave	forgiven	stick	stuck	stuck
freeze	froze	frozen	sting	stung	stung
get	got	got (gotten)	swear	swore	sworn
give	gave	given	sweep	swept	swept
go	went	gone	swim	swam	swum
grow	grew	grown	take	took	taken
hang	hung (hanged)	hung (hanged)	teach	taught	taught
have	had	had	tear	tore	torn
hear	heard	heard	tell	told	told
hide	hid	hidden	think	thought	thought
hit	hit	hit	throw	threw	thrown
hold	held	held	understand	understood	understood
hurt	hurt	hurt	wake	woke	woken
keep	kept	kept	wear	wore	worn
know	knew	known	win	won	won
lead	led	led	write	wrote	written
learn	learnt (learned)	learnt (learned)			

UNIT 7: Plurals / Countables - Uncountables

Key to the Exercises

UNIT 1: Plurals/Countables - Uncountables

1

- | | | |
|------------|-----------|-------------|
| 2 buses | 6 foxes | 10 potatoes |
| 3 peaches | 7 glasses | 11 balls |
| 4 cherries | 8 keys | 12 books |
| 5 roofs | 9 pianos | |

2

- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| 2 babies | 12 raspberries |
| 3 children | 13 sandwiches |
| 4 green leaves | 14 mice |
| 5 old ladies | 15 photos |
| 6 radios | 16 cliffs |
| 7 oxen | 17 pens |
| 8 tall women | 18 watches |
| 9 knives | 19 big feet |
| 10 toys | 20 nice books |
| 11 policemen | |

3

- | | | |
|-------------|------------|-----------|
| 2 ostriches | 6 dolphins | 10 foxes |
| 3 parrots | 7 giraffes | 11 mice |
| 4 swans | 8 deer | 12 hippos |
| 5 turkeys | 9 calves | |

4

-s	houses, apples, balls, radios, cliffs, giraffes, parrots, boys, melons, armchairs
-es	glasses, boxes, tomatoes, dresses, torches, foxes, watches, dishes
-ies	babies, ferries, cities, ladies
-ves	leaves, wives, calves, wolves
irregular	children, teeth, geese, oxen, deer, women, sheep

5

/ s /	hats, cliffs, shirts, roofs, skirts, clocks, baskets, myths
/ ɪz /	dresses, boxes, roses, dishes, foxes, glasses, bushes, cages, buses, oranges
/ z /	dolphins, chairs, babies, birds, balls, radios, songs, cherries, bags, pianos, onions, ferries, keys, flowers, doors

6

- | | | |
|--------|---------|---------|
| 2 an | 7 some | 12 some |
| 3 some | 8 an | 13 some |
| 4 some | 9 some | 14 some |
| 5 some | 10 an | 15 a |
| 6 some | 11 some | |

7

- | | |
|--|-----------------------|
| 2 some (uncountable) | 11 a (countable) |
| 3 a (countable) | 12 a (countable) |
| 4 a (countable) | 13 some (uncountable) |
| 5 some (uncountable) | 14 some (countable) |
| 6 some (countable) | 15 some (uncountable) |
| 7 an (countable) | 16 some (uncountable) |
| 8 a (countable) | 17 some (uncountable) |
| 9 a (countable) | 18 some (uncountable) |
| 10 some (uncountable)/ a (countable: when we refer to the vegetable) | |

8

- a glass of orange juice, wine
- a slice of bread, cake
- a bar of chocolate, soap
- a tin of beans
- a carton of orange juice
- a piece of chocolate, bread, cake
- a bottle of Coke, lemonade, orange juice, wine
- a cup of tea, coffee

9

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 2 two men | 5 two oranges |
| 3 four flowers | 6 three cartons of milk |
| 4 two cans of soda | |

10

- 2 three slices/pieces/loaves of bread (NOT: kilos)
- 3 four bars/pieces of chocolate
- 4 five glasses/bottles/bowls/jugs of water
- 5 two pieces/slices/kilos of cheese
- 6 three pieces/kilos/slices of meat
- 7 eight glasses/bottles of wine
- 8 four pieces/kilos/tins of salmon
- 9 ten bottles/glasses/cartons/bowls of milk
- 10 four bars of soap

11

- | | |
|-------------|---------|
| 2 soup | 6 soda |
| 3 coffee | 7 bread |
| 4 meat | 8 wood |
| 5 chocolate | |

Oral Activity

(Ss' own answers)

Writing Activity**(Suggested Answer)**

two kilos of carrots, a kilo of onions, four cartons of orange juice, twenty cans of Coke, twenty sausages, two jars of olives, five bottles of wine, six tins of beans

UNIT 2: Subject Pronouns / The Verb "To Be"**1**

- | | | |
|--------|--------|-------|
| 2 it | 5 he | 8 she |
| 3 she | 6 it | 9 it |
| 4 they | 7 they | |

2

- | | | |
|--------|---------|---------|
| 2 they | 7 he | 12 they |
| 3 it | 8 they | 13 she |
| 4 she | 9 you | 14 they |
| 5 we | 10 she | 15 it |
| 6 they | 11 they | 16 it |

3

- | | | |
|------------|------------|---------|
| 2 They are | 5 They are | 8 He is |
| 3 It is | 6 He is | |
| 4 She is | 7 It is | |

4

(Ss' own answers)

5

Long form	Short form
2 are	're
3 is	isn't
4 are	're
5 is	's
6 is	's
7 are	aren't
8 am	'm not

6

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------|
| 2 They are teachers. | 6 They are giraffes. |
| 3 They are deer. | 7 We are bakers. |
| 4 We are boys. | 8 They are men. |
| 5 They are police-women. | 9 You are children. |
| | 10 They are boxes. |

7

- | | |
|--|---|
| 2 Is he a waiter?
Yes, he is. | 5 Is she a teacher?
No, she isn't. |
| 3 Are they apples?
No, they aren't. | 6 Are they flowers?
Yes, they are. |
| 4 Is it a bear?
No, it isn't. | |
| | It's a bird. |

8

- (i) First Ss answer questions about Paul, then about Rosa and then about the other people using the table in Exercise 8.

e.g. T: *Where is Paul from?*S: *He's from England.*T: *How old is he? etc.*

- (ii) 1 isn't, is, is
2 is, isn't, is, is, isn't
3 are, aren't, are, are

(Ss' own answers)

9

- Sarah and I **are** sisters.
- Ben and Tim **are** at school.
- Horses and cows **are** animals.
- England **is** a country.
- Tim **is** from America.

10

- Greg and Bob **are** naval officers. **Are they** at home now? No, **they aren't.** **They are** at work.
- George **is** a businessman. **Is he** poor? No, **he isn't.** **He is** rich.
- This **is** a musical instrument. **Is it** a trumpet? No, **it isn't.** **It is** a saxophone.

11

- 2 Is she ugly?
No, she isn't ugly.
She is beautiful.
- 3 Are they short?
No, they aren't short.
They are tall.
- 4 Is he weak?
No, he isn't weak.
He is strong.
- 5 Is it slow?
No, it isn't slow.
It is fast.
- 6 Is she sad?
No, she isn't sad.
She is happy.

Oral Activity

(Ss' own answers)

Writing Activity

He is Pierre Delon. He is 17. He is a **student** at St Martin's College. He is **French**.

She is Nora Milton. She is 49. She is a secretary at Star TV **Channel**. She is **Canadian**.

(Ss' own answers)

UNIT 3: Articles / This - That - These - Those

1

- 2 an 4 an 6 an 8 a
3 a 5 a 7 an

Oral Activity

an orange, a ball, an ice-cream, an umbrella,
a hat, a lemon, a cup, a bottle

2

The /ðə/	The /ði/
roof, girl, book, bus, key, knife, watch	ox, actress, apple, orange, elephant, umbrella, owl

3

- 2 the 5 the 8 the
3 the 6 the 9 —
4 — 7 the 10 the

4

- 2 The 3 — 4 The 5 —

5

- 2 an 4 a, the 6 —, the
3 —, —, The 5 —, an, a

6

- 1 Jane is **a** painter. 6 Mark is a student.
2 I have got **a** uniform. 7 I have got **some** milk.
3 Helen isn't at home. 8 It is **a** house.
4 The Pyramids are in Egypt. 9 **The** earth is a planet.
5 It is **an** hourglass. 10 They have got **an** old car.

7

- 2 The, the 3 — 4 The 5 the, the

8

- a) 2 — 5 the 8 a 11 —
3 a 6 — 9 a
4 a 7 the 10 the

- b) 1 — 3 an 5 — 7 a
2 a 4 the 6 the

9

- 2 That is 5 Those are
3 Those are 6 These are
4 This is

10

- 2 It's 4 What's 6 They're
3 They're 5 It's

11

- 1 that man 4 that car
2 this clock 5 those shoes
3 These flowers 6 that cake

Oral Activity**(Suggested answers)**

- 2 What's this? It's the Eiffel Tower.
3 What's this? It's the Statue of Liberty.
4 What are these? They're gondolas.
5 What's this? It's a castle.
6 What's this? It's a windmill.
7 What are these? They're palm trees.
8 What are these? They're the Pyramids.

UNIT 4: The Verbs "Have Got" - "Can"

1

- 2 It has got a long tail.
- 3 He has got a cold.
- 4 They have got fishing rods.
- 5 She has got long hair.
- 6 It has got stripes.

2

- 2 Sally **has got** an umbrella.
Has Sally got a hat?
No, Sally hasn't got a hat.
- 3 Anna and Tom **have got** a parrot.
Have Anna and Tom got a horse?
No, Anna and Tom haven't got a horse.
- 4 The table **has got** four legs.
Has the table got three legs?
No, the table hasn't got three legs.
- 5 They **have got** a white cat.
Have they got a black cat?
No, they haven't got a black cat.
- 6 The dog **has got** a long tail.
Has the dog got a short tail?
No, the dog hasn't got a short tail.
- 7 Mike **has got** a computer.
Has Mike got a camera?
No, Mike hasn't got a camera.
- 8 Julie **has got** a big house.
Has Julie got a small house?
No, Julie hasn't got a small house.

3

(Suggested answers)

- SA: Has your brother got a motorbike?
SB: No, he hasn't.
SA: Have you got a pet?
SB: Yes, I have.
SA: Have your parents got a computer?
SB: Yes, they have.
SA: Has your sister got a video camera?
SB: Yes, she has.
SA: Have you got a bicycle?
SB: Yes, I have.
SA: Have your parents got a mobile phone?
SB: No, they haven't.
SA: Has your sister got a guitar?
SB: Yes, she has.

4

- 2 Tony has got a red ball.
- 3 He has got seven goldfish.
- 4 It is a yellow kite.
- 5 They have got a new car.
- 6 It is a big house.

5

- 2 Has the woman got blonde hair?
Yes, she has.
- 3 Have they got briefcases?
Yes, they have.
- 4 Has the lady got an umbrella?
Yes, she has.
- 5 Has the giraffe got a short neck?
No, it hasn't. It's got a long neck.
- 6 Have they got drums?
No, they haven't. They've got guitars.

6

- 2 ... hasn't got a balcony.
- 3 ... have got four legs.
- 4 ... has got a lot of pets.
- 5 ... have got toothache.
- 6 ... hasn't got her glasses.
- 7 ... have got sharp teeth.
- 8 ... haven't got enough money.

Oral Activity

- 2 Has Mary Newton got a small house?
Yes, she has.
- 3 Has Fiona Smith got a tent?
No, she hasn't. She's got a yacht.
- 4 Has Mary Newton got a watch? Yes, she has.
- 5 Has Fiona Smith got many jewels?
Yes, she has.
- 6 Has Mary Newton got a yacht?
No, she hasn't. She's got a tent.
- 7 Has Fiona Smith got a big house?
Yes, she has.
- 8 Has Mary Newton got many dresses?
No, she hasn't. She's got many T-shirts.

Writing Activity

(Suggested answer)

Fiona Smith has got many dresses but Mary Newton hasn't. She's got many T-shirts. Fiona Smith has got many jewels but Mary Newton hasn't. She's got a watch. Fiona Smith has got an expensive car but Mary Newton hasn't. She's got a cheap car. Fiona Smith has got a yacht but Mary Newton hasn't. She's got a tent.

7

- 2 SA: What can he do? SB: He can swim.
- 3 SA: What can he do? SB: He can jump.
- 4 SA: What can he do?
SB: He can ride a motorbike.

- 5 SA: What can it do? SB: It can talk.
 6 SA: What can he do?
 SB: He can take photographs.

8

- 3 A monkey can climb trees.
 4 A leopard can run fast.
 5 A pilot can fly an aeroplane.
 6 A dog can't talk.
 7 A fish can't walk.
 8 An elephant can't fly.
 9 A baker can make bread.
 10 A hamster can't ride a bicycle.

9

(Ss' own answers)

10

- 1 Can I borrow ...
 2 Can you carry ...
 3 Can I have ...
 4 Can you help ...

Oral Activity

- 2 SA: Can he iron clothes? SB: No, he can't.
 3 SA: Can he cook a meal? SB: No, he can't.
 4 SA: Can he jump from a helicopter?
 SB: Yes, he can.
 5 SA: Can he dive? SB: Yes, he can.
 6 SA: Can he climb a mountain?
 SB: Yes, he can.

Writing Activity

- a) He can't jump from a helicopter.
 He can't dive.
 He can't climb a mountain.
(Suggested answer)
 b) He can talk on the telephone/to his friends,
 etc.
 He can write a letter/ a story, etc.
 He can watch TV, a film, etc.
 He can listen to the radio/music, etc.

UNIT 5: Possessives

1

- 2 Whose computer is this? It's Helen's.
 3 Whose gloves are these? They're the boxers'.
 4 Whose ball is this? It's the footballers'.
 5 Whose teddy bear is this? It's Janet's.
 6 Whose rackets are these? They're Ben's
 and Rita's.

2

/ s /	the cat's, Beth's, Philip's, Scott's
/ iz /	George's, Liz's
/ z /	Tom's, the child's

3

- | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|
| 2 A | 4 C | 6 A |
| 3 B | 5 B | 7 C |

4

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1 has | 6 possessive case |
| 2 possessive case | 7 possessive case |
| 3 possessive case | 8 is |
| 4 is | 9 possessive case |
| 5 is | 10 has |

5

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 2 her, hers | 5 our, ours |
| 3 their, theirs | 6 his, his |
| 4 his, his | 7 their, theirs |

8 her, hers 10 your, yours

9 its, — (there is
 no possessive
 pronoun for it)

6

2 your	5 their	8 her
3 mine	6 yours	9 our, yours
4 hers	7 my	10 my, Her

7

2 their honeymoon	5 her handbag
3 your umbrella	6 our parents
4 My car	7 his homework

8

- 2 These are the chef's spoons.
 These are her spoons.
 These spoons are hers.
 3 This is the photographer's camera.
 This is his camera.
 This camera is his.
 4 This is the secretary's/teacher's/typist's
 typewriter.
 This is her typewriter.
 This typewriter is hers.
 5 These are the dancer's shoes.
 These are her shoes.
 These shoes are hers.

9

- 2 He's James and Sarah's son./He's Sarah and James' (or James's) son.
- 3 She's Linda and Mike's daughter./She's Mike and Linda's daughter.
- 4 She's James' (or James's) wife.
- 5 She's Linda and James' (or James's) mother./ She's James and Linda's mother.
- 6 He's Paul's brother.

10

- | | | |
|---------|---------|-------|
| 2 our | 4 his | 6 his |
| 3 Their | 5 their | 7 our |

11

- 3 The nurse's uniform is white.
- 4 The handle of the briefcase is small.
- 5 The kangaroo's tail is long.
- 6 The hands of the clock are black.
- 7 The clown's clothes are funny.
- 8 The leaves of the rose are green.

12

- | | | | |
|--------|------|--------|--------|
| 2 your | 4 my | 6 your | 8 your |
| 3 My | 5 my | 7 My | |

13

- | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 2 A | 3 C | 4 B | 5 A | 6 B |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

14

- | | | |
|------|--------|--------------|
| 1 my | 2 your | 3 your, mine |
|------|--------|--------------|

15

- 1 This photo is yours.
- 2 Phil has got a hat on his head.
- 3 This isn't my cousin's record.
- 4 Are these your socks?
- 5 Have you got my bag?
- 6 It's a giraffe and its neck is long.

16

- 1 **My** room is big.
- 2 The **dog's** tail is long.
- 3 The **women's** dresses are red.
- 4 Are those pencils **yours**?
- 5 That is **Mike** and Helen's house.
- 6 Whose are these rackets? They're **theirs**.
- 7 This is **her** book.
- 8 Those are **Rita's** and Jim's bicycles.
- 9 Is that **Kate's** hat?
- 10 The **windows of the house** are green.

Oral Activity

SA: What is Philippa's favourite food?

SB: Her favourite food is pizza.

SA: What is Colin's favourite food?

SB: His favourite food is pizza.

SA: What is Philippa's favourite sport? etc.

(Ss' own answers)

Writing Activity

- 1 Philippa's / Her
- 2 Colin's / his
- 3 Their
- 4 Philippa's / Her
- 5 Colin's / his
- 6 Their
- 7 Philippa's / Her
- 8 Colin's / his

(Suggested answer)

My favourite hobby is playing the guitar but my friend's is stamp-collecting. Our favourite food is ice-cream. We both like films. My favourite film is "Jurassic Park" but my friend's is "Home Alone". We both enjoy sports. My favourite sport is basketball, but my friend's is cricket. My favourite colour is brown but my friend's is pink.

Revision 1 (Units 1-5)

1

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 2 these cars | 7 these watches |
| 3 sheep | 8 children |
| 4 those monkeys | 9 those umbrellas |
| 5 policemen | 10 teeth |
| 6 books | |

2

- 2 glasses/bottles/cans of Coke
- 3 jars of jam
- 4 packets/kilos/bags of rice
- 5 cups/packets of tea
- 6 slices/pieces/kilos of cheese

7 loaves/slices/pieces of bread
8 tins/bowls of dog food

3 2 It is 4 They are 6 We are
3 he is 5 She is

4 1 a, the 3 the, the 5 The, a
2 -, an 4 -, an, -, - 6 The

5 1 The, the 5 - 9 -, -
2 - 6 -, the 10 -
3 - 7 the
4 The 8 The, -

6 2 She has got a book. She can read.
3 They have got skis. They can ski.
4 He has got a camera. He can take photos.
5 They have got a ball. They can play rugby.
6 She has got a microphone. She can sing.

7 2 Has Susan got a pet?
Susan hasn't got a pet.
3 Can Bill dive?
Bill can't dive.
4 Is it an old house?
It isn't an old house.

5 Have they got stamps?
They haven't got stamps.

8 2 She 5 Their/Her 8 They
3 She 6 His 9 Her
4 her 7 her 10 her

9 2 Dad's 4 girls'
3 man's 5 Linda's

10 3 It is ours. 5 It is yours.
4 They are his. 6 They are theirs

11 2 B 4 B 6 B 8 B 10 C
3 A 5 C 7 A 9 C

12 1 There is **an** elephant in the garden.
2 That is Bill's car. It's **his**.
3 There are **wolves** in **the** forest.
4 There's **some/a slice of/a loaf of** bread
on the table.
5 There's **some** money in my pocket.
6 They go **to school** every day.
7 My bicycle has got two **wheels**.
8 She's got **a** book.

UNIT 6: Present Continuous

1 + **ing**
studying, laughing, playing, looking, sleeping

+ ~~x~~ → **y + ing**
lying, dying

+ ~~x~~ → **ing**
dancing, writing, smoking

double consonant + ing
swimming, shopping, stopping, running

3 2 Are they listening
to the radio?
They aren't listen-
ing to the radio.
3 Is she drinking
Coke?
She isn't drinking
Coke.
4 Are you dancing?
You aren't
dancing.

5 Are we playing
basketball?
We aren't playing
basketball.
6 Am I running?
I'm not running.

2 2 are playing 7 am watching
3 is eating 8 is writing
4 are reading 9 are singing
5 is sleeping 10 is making
6 is swimming

4 2 is repairing 7 is making
3 is taking 8 are playing
4 is running 9 is typing
5 is sleeping
6 is packing

5

- 3 Is Ann cutting the grass? Yes, she is.
- 4 Are the children knitting? No, they aren't. They're standing by the gate.
- 5 Are the dogs chasing a cat? Yes, they are.
- 6 Is the postman delivering letters? Yes, he is.
- 7 Is Grandmother standing by the gate? No, she isn't. She's knitting.
- 8 Is Grandfather writing a letter? No, he isn't. He's reading a newspaper.

6

- 2 are wearing 5 is wearing
- 3 is pushing 6 is wearing
- 4 is walking

7

- 2 SA: Can you open the door?
SB: No, I'm sorry. I'm washing the dishes.
- 3 SA: Can you help in the garden?
SB: No, I'm sorry. I'm doing my homework.
- 4 SA: Can you come to the phone?
SB: No, I'm sorry. I'm having a lesson.
- 5 SA: Can you tidy your room?
SB: No, I'm sorry. I'm writing a letter.
- 6 SA: Can you help me with these bags?
SB: No, I'm sorry. I'm having a shower.

8

- A: Dad, where is Mum?
B: She's in the living room.
- A: What's she doing?
B: She's watching TV.
- A: Grandma, where are you?
B: I'm in the garden.
- A: What are you doing?
B: I'm watering the flowers.
- A: Helen, where is Tom?
B: He's in the dining room.
- A: What's he doing?
B: He's having dinner.
- A: Helen, where are you?
B: I'm in the bathroom.
- A: What are you doing?
B: I'm washing my hair.
- A: Dad, where's Uncle Phil?
B: He's in the garage.
- A: What's he doing?
B: He's cleaning his bike.

9

- 2 is wearing 4 are standing
- 3 is putting 5 are preparing

10

(Suggested answer)

There are three people in the picture. A man and a woman **are sitting** at the table. They **are smiling**. The man **is wearing** a pink shirt and the woman **is wearing** a blue top/blouse. The woman **is holding** a child and the man **is holding** a glass of water. The child **is eating**.

11

- 1 am/'m using 3 is/'s shining
- 2 am/'m trying 4 am/'m drinking

12

- 2 Why is the dog barking?
- 3 He is not talking on the phone.
- 4 They are packing their suitcases.
- 5 She is not watching TV.
- 6 Where are your friends staying?
- 7 At the moment I am learning to play golf./I am learning to play golf at the moment.
- 8 Are you going to the shops?

13

- 1 We **are** looking for a new flat.
- 2 I am **playing** tennis now.
- 3 George and Mary **are** watching TV.
- 4 What are you **doing**?
- 5 You **aren't** listening to the teacher.
- 6 He **is** reading a magazine.

14

- 2 F 4 D 6 B
- 3 A 5 E

Oral Activity

(Ss' own answers)

Writing Activity

- 1 is working 3 is using 5 is lying
- 2 is cleaning 4 is wearing 6 is looking

(Ss' own answers)

UNIT 7: Object Pronouns / The Imperative

1

- 2 Look at him. 4 Look at them.
- 3 Look at her. 5 Look at it.

2

- 2 I 5 she 8 I
- 3 She 6 us 9 him
- 4 me 7 He 10 her

3

- 2 He is afraid of them.
- 3 She is coming with us.
- 4 It is for him.
- 5 He is talking to them.
- 6 We live near you.
- 7 They belong to her.
- 8 Is it for you?

4

- 2 they
- 3 you
- 4 us
- 5 we
- 6 them
- 7 She
- 8 He

5

- 2 Let's read the map. (suggestion)
- 3 Try some of this. (offer)
- 4 Read this, please. (request)
- 5 Don't go into the sea again! (order)
- 6 Don't move, please. (request)

6

- 2 wash
- 3 Don't wake
- 4 Let's have
- 5 Don't be
- 6 Don't move
- 7 Don't break
- 8 Open
- 9 Turn on
- 10 Close

7

- 2 Don't look at her!
- 3 Don't eat it!
- 4 Don't tell her the news!
- 5 Don't look at it!
- 6 Don't listen to them!
- 7 Don't give the money to us!
- 8 Don't open it!
- 9 Don't look at them!
- 10 Don't make a sandwich for him!

8

- 1 Ask
- 2 Have
- 3 make
- 4 Don't touch

9

- 1 Tim and Ann are my cousins. **They** live in Germany.
- 2 Look at that dog! It is eating a bone.
- 3 That is my jacket. Give it to **me**, please.
- 4 Pass me those photographs. I want to look at **them**.
- 5 It's Mike on the phone. **He** wants to talk to you.
- 6 "Are you going to the park?" "Yes. Please come with **me**."
- 7 Don't **open** the window! It's cold.

Oral Activity

Doctor

- Take off your clothes.
- Open **your** mouth.
- Lie down. (please).
- Take a deep breath.

Photographer

- Smile!
- Don't move!
- Look at the camera, (please).

Writing Activity

- 1 Cut
- 2 Don't throw
- 3 Take
- 4 Make
- 5 Put
- 6 Light
- 7 Put

UNIT 8: There is - Are/Some - Any - No

1

- 2 There are
- 3 Are there
- 4 There aren't
- 5 there isn't
- 6 there isn't

2

- 2 There are
- 3 There isn't
- 4 There aren't

SA: Is there a restaurant? SB: No, there isn't.
 SA: Are there (any) trees? SB: Yes, there are.
 SA: Is there a lamp-post? SB: Yes, there is.
 SA: Are there (any) office blocks? SB: Yes, there are.

3

- 2 There are
- 3 It is
- 4 There is
- 5 There are.
- 6 They are
- 6 There is, It is

4

(Suggested questions and answers)

Picture A

- Is there any lettuce?
No, there isn't any.
- Are there any plates?
Yes, there are some.
- Are there any potatoes?
No, there aren't any.

Picture B

- Is there any bread?
Yes, there is some.
- Are there any plates?
No, there aren't any.
- Is there any milk?
No, there isn't any.
- Are there any grapes?
No, there aren't any.
- Are there any peppers?
Yes, there are some.. etc.

5

- | | | |
|--------|-------------|-------------|
| 2 some | 5 any, some | 8 any |
| 3 any | 6 some | 9 some, any |
| 4 any | 7 no | 10 no |

6

- | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|
| 2 some | 4 some | 6 any |
| 3 any | 5 some | 7 some |

7

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 2 Nobody/No one | 4 Nobody/No one |
| 3 Nowhere | |

8

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| 2 anybody/anyone | 6 anybody/anyone |
| 3 Somebody/
Someone | 7 something |
| 4 anything | 8 Somebody/
Someone |
| 5 something | |

9

- | | |
|------------------|------------|
| 2 anyone/anybody | 5 Nothing |
| 3 anything | 6 anything |
| 4 Nobody/No one | |

10

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 2 somewhere | 5 nowhere |
| 3 anywhere | 6 somewhere |
| 4 anywhere | |

11

- | | |
|-------------|------------------------|
| 2 anywhere | 5 somebody/
someone |
| 3 somewhere | 6 anything |
| 4 something | |

12

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------|
| 1 some | 3 some |
| 2 anybody, some | 4 somewhere |

13

- | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 2 C | 4 B | 6 C | 8 B |
| 3 C | 5 B | 7 B | |

14

- 2 Has he got anything in his hand?
He hasn't got anything in his hand.
He's got nothing in his hand.
- 3 Is there anybody/anyone in the garden?
There isn't anybody/anyone in the garden.
There's nobody/no one in the garden.
- 4 Is there any meat in the fridge?
There isn't any meat in the fridge.
There's no meat in the fridge.
- 5 Is the dog anywhere in the house?
The dog isn't anywhere in the house.
The dog is nowhere in the house.

15

- | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 2 f | 3 a | 4 b | 5 c | 6 e |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

16

- 1 Have you got **any** sugar?
- 2 There **isn't** any bread./There is **no** bread./
There is **some** bread.
- 3 There are some **pies**./There **is a** pie./There **is** some pie.
- 4 Is there **anybody/anyone** in the room?
- 5 We haven't got **any** ham.
- 6 There is **nobody/no one** in the garden.
There isn't **anybody/anyone** in the garden.
- 7 There isn't **any** bacon./There **is no** bacon.
- 8 Have you got **anything** in your bag?

Oral Activity

- SA: Are there (any) tennis courts at the hotel?
SB: Yes, there are.
- SA: Is there a golf course at the hotel?
SB: No, there isn't.
- SA: Is there a disco at the hotel?
SB: No, there isn't.
- SA: Is there a restaurant at the hotel?
SB: Yes, there is.
- SA: Are there (any) shops at the hotel?
SB: No, there aren't.
- SA: Is there a café at the hotel?
SB: Yes, there is.
- SA: Is there a bar at the hotel?
SB: Yes, there is.

Writing Activity

Dear Jack,

I'm staying at the Paradise Hotel. It is great! There is a swimming pool, a **restaurant**, a **café** and a **bar**. There are some **tennis courts** too, but there isn't a **golf course** or a **disco**. There aren't **any** shops either, but I'm having lots of fun.

See you soon.

Best wishes,
Fred

UNIT 9: Present Simple

1	-s	opens, buys, puts, likes, sits, plays, begins, says
	-es	fixes, kisses, goes, catches, washes, teaches, passes
	-ies	dries, flies, copies

2	/s/	looks, speaks, drinks, puts, walks, jumps, coughs, helps, writes, eats
	/ɪz/	catches, brushes, dances, rises, matches, wishes, loses, arranges
	/z/	drives, rides, opens, stays, knows, sees, listens, travels, rains

- 3**
- | | | |
|---------|-----------|----------|
| 2 walks | 5 studies | 8 does |
| 3 go | 6 visit | 9 washes |
| 4 live | 7 speaks | 10 boils |

- 4**
- Does Peter play the guitar every day, too?
 - Do Anna and Mary go shopping on Mondays, too?
 - Does Lucy like video games, too?
 - Do the children watch TV in the afternoon, too?

- 5**
- | | | |
|----------|------------|-----------|
| 2 goes | 6 comes | 10 closes |
| 3 arrive | 7 prepares | 11 go |
| 4 set | 8 opens | |
| 5 tidy | 9 eat | |

- 6**
- SA: Do you set the tables?
SB: No, I don't. The waiters set the tables.
 - SA: Do the waiters tidy the kitchen?
SB: Yes, they do.
 - SA: Does the chef come at half past four?
SB: No, he doesn't. He comes at five o'clock.
 - SA: Does he prepare the food?
SB: Yes, he does.
 - SA: Does the restaurant open at seven o'clock?
SB: No, it doesn't. It opens at six o'clock.
 - SA: Do many people eat here?
SB: Yes, they do.
 - SA: Does the restaurant close at one o'clock?
SB: Yes, it does.

- 7**
- Kate never goes to bed late at night.
 - My mother rarely watches TV.
 - You can sometimes see clouds in the sky.
 - Ben seldom eats in a restaurant.
 - Joanne doesn't usually get up early.
 - They are often late for school.

8 (Ss' own answers)

- 9**
- Do we often play basketball on Saturdays?
We don't often play basketball on Saturdays.
 - Does Bill drive to work every day?
Bill doesn't drive to work every day.
 - Does our dog like biscuits?
Our dog doesn't like biscuits.
 - Do they live in France?
They don't live in France.
 - Does Samantha work in a supermarket?
Samantha doesn't work in a supermarket.
 - Do Paul and Mary often go to the gym?
Paul and Mary don't often go to the gym.
 - Does David always get up at 8 o'clock?
David doesn't always get up at 8 o'clock.
 - Does Miss Jones teach maths?
Miss Jones doesn't teach maths.
 - Do Sue and Jill usually wear jeans?
Sue and Jill don't usually wear jeans.

- 10**
- | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|
| 2 i | 4 j | 6 g | 8 h | 10 f |
| 3 e | 5 a | 7 d | 9 c | |

- 11**
- He usually has breakfast at 8.30 every day, but today he is reading the newspaper.
 - He usually drives to work at 9.00 every day, but today he is working in the garden.
 - He usually eats dinner at home at 6.00 every day, but today he is eating at a restaurant.

- 12**
- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|
| 2 do you go | 8 Do you want |
| 3 Is he having | 9 am trying |
| 4 belongs | 10 is raining |
| 5 likes, has | 11 needs |
| 6 am not watching | 12 forgets |
| 7 do not usually ride | |

13

- | | |
|--------------|-------------------|
| 2 belongs | 9 go |
| 3 spends | 10 is raining |
| 4 think | 11 hate |
| 5 are having | 12 are having |
| 6 swim | 13 are eating |
| 7 go | 14 smells |
| 8 have | 15 Are you having |

14

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 2 at the moment | 6 at the moment |
| 3 now | 7 now |
| 4 at the weekend | 8 on Fridays |
| 5 seldom | |

15

- | | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 2 B | 3 A | 4 A | 5 B | 6 B | 7 C |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

16

- 1 He **doesn't** speak English.
- 2 He **swims** every morning.
- 3 **Do** you work in a bank?
- 4 I **am having** dinner now.
- 5 Mark **walks** to school every day.
- 6 Kate **likes** pizza.
- 7 The sun **rises** in the east.
- 8 Susan and Jo **live** in New York.
- 9 We **need** some sugar.

Oral Activity

(Ss' own answers)

Writing Activity

(Ss' own answers)

UNIT 10: A lot of - Much - Many / (A) little - (A) few

1

- SA: How many teachers are there?
SB: Not many.
SA: How many eggs are there? SB: Not many.
SA: How much water is there? SB: Not much.
SA: How many students are there?
SB: Not many.
SA: How much tea is there? SB: Not much.
SA: How much meat is there? SB: Not much.
SA: How many boys are there? SB: Not many.
SA: How much milk is there? SB: Not much.
SA: How many apples are there? SB: Not many.
SA: How many sheep are there? SB: Not many.
SA: How many women are there? SB: Not many.
SA: How much salt is there? SB: Not much.
SA: How much paper is there? SB: Not much.
SA: How much money is there? SB: Not much.
SA: How many letters are there? SB: Not many.
SA: How many books are there? SB: Not many.
SA: How many records are there? SB: Not many.
SA: How much pepper is there? SB: Not much.
SA: How much wine is there? SB: Not much.
SA: How many pens are there? SB: Not many.

2

- | | | |
|------------|-------------|-------------|
| 2 many | 7 many | 12 much |
| 3 a lot of | 8 many | 13 a lot of |
| 4 much | 9 much | 14 much |
| 5 much | 10 a lot of | 15 a lot of |
| 6 a lot of | 11 many | |

3

- 3 Is there much popcorn? Yes, there is a lot.
- 4 Are there many bananas? No, there aren't many.
- 5 Is there much meat? No, there isn't much.
- 6 Is there much bread? No, there isn't much.
- 7 Are there many chips? Yes, there are a lot.
- 8 Is there much cake? Yes, there is a lot.
- 9 Are there many eggs? Yes, there are a lot.
- 10 Is there much salad? Yes, there is a lot.

4

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 2 a lot of friends | 6 much rice |
| 3 much time | 7 a lot of shops |
| 4 many giraffes | 8 a lot of snow |
| 5 many suitcases | |

5

- | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 2 d | 3 a | 4 e | 5 c |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|

6

- | | | |
|--------|---------|--------|
| 2 much | 4 a lot | 6 much |
| 3 many | 5 many | |

7

- a little tea, a few books, a little chocolate, a little bread, a few men, a few deer, a little jam, a few glasses, a little honey, a few knives, a few children, a little Coke, a little butter, a little lemonade, a little salt, a few desks, a few hats, a little pepper

8

- | | | |
|------------|---------------|------------|
| 2 a little | 4 very few | 6 a little |
| 3 a few | 5 very little | |

9

- | | | |
|------------|------------|------------|
| 2 a little | 4 a little | 6 a little |
| 3 a few | 5 a few | |

10

- | | | | |
|-----|-----|------|------|
| 2 B | 5 B | 8 A | 11 B |
| 3 A | 6 B | 9 A | 12 B |
| 4 A | 7 C | 10 C | |

11

- There is very **little** soup in the bowl.
- How **many** carrots are there in the fridge?
- Rita has got **a lot of** money.
- There are **a few** people in the shop.
- Mike hasn't got **many** friends.
- There is **little** snow on the mountains.
- How **many** deer can you see in the picture?
- I have got **few** CDs but a lot of cassettes.
- There are **a lot of** animals in the zoo.
- How **much** sugar is there in the bowl?

Oral Activity

(Suggested answers)

SA: How much honey is there? SB: There is a little.

SA: How many eggs are there? SB: There are a few.

SA: How much orange juice is there?
SB: There is a lot.

SA: How many bananas are there? SB: There are (very) few.

SA: How many slices of bread are there?
SB: There are (very) few. OR How much bread is there? SB: There is very little.

SA: How much jam is there? SB: There is (very) little.

SA: How many biscuits are there? SB: There are a lot.

SA: How much coffee is there? SB: There is (very) little.

Writing Activity

(Suggested answers)

There is a little honey and there is a lot of orange juice.

There are a few eggs but there are very few bananas.

There is very little bread and there is very little jam. There are a lot of biscuits but there is very little coffee.

Revision 2 (Units 1-10)

1

- He** is repairing it.
- Eat **it!**
- Is **she** reading it?
- They** are playing with it.
- Don't touch **them!**
- She** is talking to **him**.
- Are **they** listening to it?

2

- | | |
|-------------|--------------|
| 2 Wash | 6 Turn on |
| 3 Don't sit | 7 Don't talk |
| 4 Write | 8 Let's play |
| 5 Have | |

3

- | | |
|------------|---------------|
| 2 Somebody | 7 somewhere |
| 3 anything | 8 any |
| 4 any | 9 no |
| 5 Nobody | 10 something, |
| 6 some | anybody |

4

- | | |
|------------------|--------------------------|
| 2 spends | 7 are having, are making |
| 3 are you crying | 8 smells |
| 4 is studying | 9 is staying, wants |
| 5 does Helen go | 10 think |
| 6 don't remember | |

5

- | | |
|---------------|--------------------------|
| 2 belongs | 7 are those people doing |
| 3 Is he | 8 are cleaning |
| 4 don't think | 9 come |
| 5 is making | 10 lets |
| 6 is getting | |

6

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 2 (Very) Few | 5 a few |
| 3 (very) little | 6 a little, a few |
| 4 (very) little | 7 (very) little |

- 7**
- | | | |
|------------|------------|------------|
| 2 a few | 5 much | 8 little |
| 3 a lot of | 6 few | 9 a little |
| 4 a lot of | 7 a lot of | |

- 8**
- | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|
| 2 C | 4 B | 6 A | 8 C | 10 A |
| 3 A | 5 C | 7 C | 9 A | |

- 9**
- I want **something** nice to eat.
 - I **go** swimming every week.
 - The bus stops **somewhere** near the park.

- Let's go** shopping.
- How **many** oranges are there in the bowl?
- He **is washing** the dog at the moment.
- He's got very **little** bread.
- Can I have **a few** strawberries, please?
- They are very **clever** girls.
- We **have** got a new car.
- There are a few **lions** in the zoo.
- Peter always **does** his homework.
- Go to bed now!
- There isn't **any** sugar in my coffee.

UNIT 11: Past Simple (Was/Were - Had)

- 1** 2 weren't 3 wasn't 4 weren't 5 wasn't

- 2**
- SA: Where was Helen at 8 o'clock yesterday?
SB: She was at the park.
 - SA: Where were Tom and Mary at 8 o'clock yesterday?
SB: They were at the theatre.
 - SA: Where was Mr Miller at 8 o'clock yesterday?
SB: He was at work.
 - SA: Where was Doris at 8 o'clock yesterday?
SB: She was at home.
 - SA: Where were you and the boys at 8 o'clock yesterday?
SB: We were at the supermarket.

- 3**
- | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|
| 2 were | 5 am | 8 is |
| 3 was | 6 was | 9 were |
| 4 is | 7 were | 10 Are |

- 4**
- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 2 Was, wasn't, was | 4 Was, wasn't, was |
| 3 Were, weren't, were | 5 Were, were |

- 5**
- How many people were at the meeting?
b) Forty-five.
 - Why were you sad? d) Because I was alone.

- Were you at home last night? e) No, I was out.
- Was the shop open? a) No, it was closed.
- How much were the tickets? c) £20.

- 6**
- Were there mobile phones a hundred years ago? No, there weren't.
 - Were there computers a hundred years ago? No, there weren't.
 - Were there watches a hundred years ago? Yes, there were.
 - Were there trains a hundred years ago? Yes, there were.
 - Were there televisions a hundred years ago? No, there weren't.
 - Were there washing machines a hundred years ago? No, there weren't.
 - Were there hot-air balloons a hundred years ago? Yes, there were.

- 7**
- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| 2 didn't have | 4 didn't have |
| 3 didn't have | |

- 8**
- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 2 had | 5 did, have |
| 3 did, have | 6 Did, have |
| 4 had | |

- 9** (Ss' own answers)

- 10**
- | | | |
|--------|--------|-------|
| 2 was | 4 was | 6 had |
| 3 have | 5 have | |

11

- 2 There was, It was
- 3 There were, They were
- 4 There were, They were
- 5 There were, It was
- 6 There was, It was
- 7 There were, It was
- 8 There were, It was

12

- 1 Did Jim **have** a bath this morning?
- 2 **Was there** a telephone call for me?
- 3 **Were** your parents on holiday in June?
- 4 Mary **didn't have** a party yesterday.
- 5 There **weren't** any biscuits left in the tin.

13

- | | |
|--------|--------|
| 1 have | 4 Was |
| 2 Was | 5 have |
| 3 Were | |

Oral Activity

(Suggested answers)

- SA: Were there any houses?
 SB: Yes, there were.

- SA: Were there any cars?
 SB: No, there weren't.
 SA: Were there any shops?
 SB: No, there weren't.
 SA: Were there any wide streets?
 SB: No, there weren't.
 SA: Were there any trees?
 SB: Yes, there were.
 SA: Was it crowded?
 SB: No, it wasn't.

Writing Activity

- | | | |
|-------|-------|----------|
| 1 is | 3 is | 5 aren't |
| 2 are | 4 are | |

(Suggested answer)

... tall buildings, cars or shops. There weren't any wide streets. There were only houses and trees. It wasn't very crowded.

UNIT 12: Past Simple (Regular/Irregular Verbs)

1

-ed	-d	-ied	double consonant +ed
stayed	hated	tidied	travelled
pulled	loved	cried	planned
kissed	danced	studied	robbed
enjoyed	changed	tried	dropped
cooked	lived	hurried	preferred

2

/ id /	/ t /	/ d /
waited	wished	opened
visited	looked	carried
ended	jumped	cleaned
added	cooked	lived
counted	finished	prayed
decided	matched	changed
	laughed	
	kissed	
	typed	

3

- | | | |
|---------|----------|------------|
| 2 made | 9 came | 16 woke |
| 3 broke | 10 found | 17 brought |
| 4 read | 11 said | 18 left |
| 5 saw | 12 took | 19 slept |
| 6 drank | 13 drove | 20 swam |
| 7 fed | 14 stole | 21 knew |
| 8 ate | 15 wrote | 22 gave |

4

- 2 John met somebody yesterday.
Did he meet his boss?
- 3 Father repaired something yesterday.
Did he repair the car?
- 4 They visited somebody yesterday.
Did they visit the Browns?
- 5 Sheila bought something yesterday.
Did she buy a dress?
- 6 Tom talked to somebody yesterday.
Did he talk to Ben?
- 7 They brought something yesterday.
Did they bring a cake?

5

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 2 read | 7 didn't hear |
| 3 didn't find | 8 did they have |
| 4 didn't eat | 9 did you buy |
| 5 Did you speak | 10 opened |
| 6 Did you ring | 11 washed |

6

- | | |
|---------------|-----------|
| 1 was | a went |
| 2 needed | b called |
| 3 didn't like | c took |
| 4 missed | d shouted |
| 5 stole | e went |
| 6 broke | f went |
| 7 didn't feel | g took |
| 8 had | h left |

2 e 3 h 4 g 5 b 6 d 7 c 8 a

7

- | | | |
|----------|----------|-------|
| 2 found | 5 showed | 8 had |
| 3 put up | 6 picked | |
| 4 ate | 7 swam | |

8

- 2 SA: Did they find a nice place for their tent?
SB: Yes, they did.
- 3 SA: Did Mrs Carter put up the tent?
SB: No, she didn't. Mr Carter put up the tent.
- 4 SA: Did they eat hamburgers and biscuits?
SB: No, they didn't. They ate sandwiches and cakes.
- 5 SA: Did Mr Carter show the children how to fish?
SB: Yes, he did.
- 6 SA: Did Mrs Carter swim in the river?
SB: No, she didn't. Champ swam in the river./ Mrs Carter picked flowers.
- 7 SA: Did they have a very good time?
SB: Yes, they did.

9

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 2 Yes, I did. | 8 washed |
| 3 didn't go | 9 fed |
| 4 Did you post | 10 took |
| 5 No, I didn't. | 11 Did you water |
| 6 Did you make | 12 No, I didn't. |
| 7 Yes, I did. | |

10

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 2 phoned | 7 woke up, had, ate |
| 3 Did you watch, don't like | 8 leaves, is still working, came |
| 4 is reading, reads | 9 are looking |
| 5 went | 10 visit |
| 6 didn't go, stayed, listened | 11 left, studied, became |

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 12 are playing | 15 did you visit, liked |
| 13 meets, drove, spent | 16 gets up, woke up, wanted |
| 14 is, left | |

11

- | | |
|----------------|-------------------|
| 2 did she move | 5 did she drive |
| 3 did he go | 6 did they invite |
| 4 did he see | 7 did you have |

1 d 3 f 5 g 7 c
2 a 4 b 6 e**12**

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 2 am having | 8 played |
| 3 went | 9 hates |
| 4 came | 10 didn't dance |
| 5 Did you enjoy | 11 Did they serve |
| 6 had | 12 were |
| 7 didn't like | 13 did you do |

13

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| 2 is working | 7 Did you call |
| 3 talked | 8 get up |
| 4 is staying | 9 went |
| 5 eat | 10 bought |
| 6 broke | |

14

2 C 3 C 4 A 5 B

15

1 didn't have 2 enjoyed 3 did, break

Oral Activity

(Ss' own answers)

Writing Activity

(Suggested answer)

Last summer I travelled abroad. I went to France. I stayed in a hotel and I swam every day. I didn't go to any bars, but I met lots of new people and took lots of photos. I sunbathed in the mornings, but I didn't read any books. I often watched the sun set.

UNIT 13: Present Perfect

1

- | | | |
|-----------|------------|-----------|
| 2 cut | 9 drunk | 16 sung |
| 3 worked | 10 gone | 17 taught |
| 4 left | 11 caught | 18 rung |
| 5 fed | 12 read | 19 done |
| 6 brought | 13 arrived | 20 eaten |
| 7 swum | 14 made | |
| 8 bought | 15 given | |

2

- 2 SA: Has Jim eaten his meal?
SB: No, he hasn't eaten his meal.
- 3 SA: Has John talked to his parents?
SB: Yes, he has talked to his parents.
- 4 SA: Has she read that book?
SB: No, she hasn't read that book.
- 5 SA: Have they cleaned their house?
SB: Yes, they have cleaned their house.
- 6 SA: Has Mark bought a new bike?
SB: Yes, he has bought a new bike.
- 7 SA: Have you phoned your father?
SB: No, I haven't phoned my father.

3

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 2 have not / haven't done | 8 has not/hasn't finished |
| 3 has baked | 9 has knitted |
| 4 Have you sent | 10 have forgotten |
| 5 has watered | 11 Has the doctor taken |
| 6 have lost | 12 has written |
| 7 Have Fiona and Andrew moved | |

4

- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| 2 have cleaned | 5 have watered |
| 3 have cooked | 6 have washed |
| 4 have taken | 7 have cut |

5

- 2 SA: How long has Kim been a teacher?
SB: She has been a teacher since 1995.
- 3 SA: How long have they worked here?
SB: They have worked here for six months.
- 4 SA: How long has Peter known them?
SB: He has known them since last year.
- 5 SA: How long has Rob been ill?
SB: He has been ill since Tuesday.

6

- | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|
| 2 since | 5 since | 8 since |
| 3 for | 6 for | |
| 4 for | 7 since | |

7

- 3 SA: Has Tom written the letter yet?
SB: Yes, he has already written the letter.
- 4 SA: Has Sophia watched the news yet?
SB: No, she hasn't watched the news yet.
- 5 SA: Has Mum cleaned the house yet?
SB: No, she hasn't cleaned the house yet.
- 6 SA: Have they done the shopping yet?
SB: Yes, they have already done the shopping.
- 7 SA: Have you washed the clothes yet?
SB: Yes, I've already washed the clothes.
- 8 SA: Has Bob gone to bed yet?
SB: No, he hasn't gone to bed yet.

8

- 2 Has Molly ever worked in an office?
Molly has never worked in an office.
- 3 Has Colin gone home yet?
Colin has already gone home.
- 4 Have Ralph and Wendy eaten breakfast yet?
Ralph and Wendy have just eaten breakfast.

9

- | | |
|--------------|------------|
| 2 just/never | 6 so far |
| 3 ever | 7 for |
| 4 never | 8 since |
| 5 yet/so far | 9 recently |

10

- SA: Has Mary ever caught a big fish?
SB: No, she hasn't.
SA: Have you ever caught a big fish?
SB: Yes, I have./No, I haven't.
- SA: Has Bill ever flown in a plane?
SB: No, he hasn't.
SA: Has Mary ever flown in a plane?
SB: Yes, she has.
SA: Have you ever flown in a plane?
SB: Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.
- SA: Has Bill ever travelled abroad?
SB: Yes, he has.
SA: Has Mary ever travelled abroad?
SB: No, she hasn't.
SA: Have you ever travelled abroad?
SB: Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.

- SA: Has Bill ever ridden a camel?
SB: Yes, he has.
SA: Has Mary ever ridden a camel?
SB: No, she hasn't.
SA: Have you ever ridden a camel?
SB: Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.

- 11** 2 he finished it 4 she moved house
3 I read it

- 12** 2 Have you ever 6 Have you worn
 flown 7 drank
3 have just emptied 8 has visited
4 went 9 Did you come
5 Did you eat 10 Did you go

- 13** 1 B: saw 4 A: Have you ever
 A: Did you touch been
 B: were B: went
2 A: Did you go A: did you stay
 B: bought B: stayed
 A: did you buy
3 A: Have you
 finished
 B: finished
 A: Have you typed
 B: have already
 typed

- 14** 2 (have) named 8 did not/didn't catch
3 has bought 9 has recently
4 has given redecorated
5 moved 10 (has) painted
6 took 11 (has) bought
7 took

- 15** 2 B 4 B 6 A 8 B 10 A
3 B 5 B 7 C 9 B

- 16** The following words must be crossed out:
1 have 4 not
2 be 5 already
3 ever 6 never

- 17** 2 have not visited
3 ago did you visit
4 became a doctor

Oral Activity

- SA: Have they painted the fence?
SB: Yes, they have.
SA: Have they bought new carpets?
SB: Yes, they have.
SA: Have they fixed the roof?
SB: No, they haven't.
SA: Have they repaired the taps?
SB: No, they haven't.
SA: Have they polished the floors?
SB: Yes, they have.
SA: Have they planted any trees?
SB: No, they haven't.
SA: Have they cleaned the cupboards?
SB: Yes, they have.

Writing Activity

(Suggested answer)

We have bought new carpets, but we haven't fixed the roof or repaired the taps yet. We have also polished the floors and cleaned the cupboards, but we haven't planted any trees.

UNIT 14: Prepositions

- 1** in spring, on Friday, at the weekend, on Saturday evening, at noon, on July 5th, in the evening, at 9 o'clock, on Sunday, in 1972, at night, in the 19th century, at 6 o'clock, on Monday morning, on September 16th, in the morning, in the winter, on Christmas Day, at dawn

- 2** 2 on 4 On 6 in 8 on 10 on
3 at 5 in 7 at 9 in

- 3** 2 on 5 - 8 - 11 at 14 at
3 - 6 in 9 - 12 at 15 at
4 at 7 - 10 on 13 -

- 4 1 on 2 at 3 at 4 in

Oral Activity

(Ss' own answers)

- 5 2 in 5 in 8 on 11 on
3 at 6 at 9 on 12 in
4 in 7 at 10 on

- 6 2 under 6 beside 10 next to
3 in front of 7 near 11 between
4 behind 8 on 12 at
5 among 9 in

- 7 2 at 4 on 6 in front of
3 near 5 on 7 in

- 8 2 in front of 5 on 8 in
3 on 6 under 9 next to
4 between 7 near

Oral Activity

(Suggested answer)

- SA: Where is Emily's bed?
SB: It's between two small tables.
SA: Where is the lamp?
SB: It's on the desk. etc.

Writing Activity

(Suggested answer)

There is a bed and a desk in it. My desk is near the door. There is a TV on a small table. There are some posters on the wall.

- 9 2 round 5 over 8 into
3 from ... to 6 up
4 through 7 down

- 10 2 into 5 on 8 onto
3 through 6 onto 9 into
4 out of 7 across 10 by

- 11 2 through 4 up 6 down
3 out of 5 across 7 across

(Suggested answer)

Go across the road and the bridge is in front of you. Go up the steps, across the bridge, and down the steps. Walk until you get to King's Road and turn right. Go through the tunnel. When you come out of the tunnel, turn left and the railway station is in front of you.

Oral Activity

- 2 along 5 up 8 through
3 to 6 down 9 over
4 out of 7 into

Writing Activity

(Ss' own answers)

UNIT 15: The Future

- 1 2 'll 4 'll 6 'll
3 won't 5 won't

- 2 SA: She won't cook a meal today.
SB: Will she cook a meal tomorrow, then?
3 SA: They won't go out tonight.
SB: Will they go out tomorrow night, then?
4 SA: She won't visit them tonight.
SB: Will she visit them tomorrow night, then?

- 5 SA: I won't study tonight.
SB: Will you study tomorrow night, then?
6 SA: He won't sing tonight.
SB: Will he sing tomorrow night, then?

- 3 2 will/'ll 5 will/'ll 8 will/'ll
3 will 6 will/'ll 9 will/'ll
4 will 7 will 10 will/'ll
not/won't not/won't

- 4** 2 'll lend 4 'll take 6 'll order
3 'll go 5 'll show

- 5** 2 Will Tom go to Africa next year?
Tom won't go to Africa next year.
3 Will she visit us next Tuesday?
She won't visit us next Tuesday.

- 6** 2 he won't. 5 she won't.
3 she won't. 6 he will.
4 they will. 7 I won't.

- 7** 2 He's going to post it.
3 She's going to take a taxi.
4 She's going to go to the hairdresser's.
5 She's going to have a party.
6 He's going to study all day.

- 8** 2 are you going to tidy
3 isn't going to play
4 are going to visit
5 Is Denise going to appear
6 isn't going to sing
7 am not going to walk
8 Are you going to help
9 is going to cook
10 isn't going to come

- 9** 2 Is Mrs Taylor going to visit her mum on
Tuesday?
No, she isn't. She's going to visit her mum
on Monday.
3 Are Mr and Mrs Taylor going to play tennis
on Tuesday?
Yes, they are.
4 Is Eric going to study for an exam on
Thursday?
No, he isn't. He's going to study for an exam
on Wednesday.
5 Is Rose going to tidy her room on
Thursday?
Yes, she is.

- 10** 2 am/'m going to 5 will/'ll write
finish 6 am/'m going
3 am/'m going to be to visit
4 am/'m going to
study

- 11** 2 warning 5 threat
3 evidence 6 intention
4 prediction 7 promise

- 12** 2 am/'m having 6 will not (won't) let
3 will/'ll take off 7 am/'m going (to
4 is/'s flying go)
5 is/'s going to be 8 will/'ll snow

- 13** 2 C 4 C 6 B 8 C 10 C
3 A 5 B 7 A 9 A

- 14** 1 am/'m having 6 went
2 am/'m staying 7 tasted
3 have/'ve seen 8 are going to
4 went visit/are visiting
5 were/are 9 will/'ll like

- 15** **Are you coming** to Paul's party?
What are you doing on Friday evening?
You **will be** rich and famous.
Yes, I **will have** chicken and chips, please.

- 16** The following words should be crossed out.
1 being 4 going
2 not 5 has
3 never

Oral Activity

- 2 SA: Is Mr Harris meeting Mr Miller at 12
o'clock on Monday?
SB: Yes, he is.
3 SA: Is Mr Harris having lunch with Mr Miller
at 3 o'clock on Monday?
SB: No, he isn't. He's having lunch with Mr
Miller at 2 o'clock on Monday.
4 SA: Is Mr Harris making a speech at 11
o'clock on Tuesday?
SB: Yes, he is.
5 SA: Is Mr Harris giving an interview at 5
o'clock on Tuesday?
SB: No, he isn't. He's giving an interview at
3 o'clock on Tuesday.
6 SA: Is Mr Harris flying back at 6 o'clock on
Tuesday?
SB: Yes, he is.

Writing Activity

... Mr Miller at 12.00. After that he is having
lunch with Mr Miller at 2.00. Then, on Tuesday
he is making a speech at 11.00. After that, he
is giving an interview at 3.00 and finally he is
flying back at 6.00.

Revision 3 (Units 1-15)

1

- 2 wasn't 4 weren't 6 were
3 Were 5 Was 7 wasn't

2

- 2 yet 6 already 10 yet
3 since 7 never 11 for
4 for 8 ever 12 yet
5 just 9 since

3

- 2 had 6 ate 10 caught
3 watched 7 was 11 felt
4 saw 8 did 12 enjoyed
5 bought 9 were

4

- 2 had 9 didn't come
3 plays 10 brings
4 have you known 11 Do you want
5 is helping 12 won't be
6 did Jack ask 13 Has Dad repaired
7 will help 14 has published
8 have just painted 15 won't take

5

- 2 will get 3 will probably
3 is going to walk cook/is probably
4 will pay going to cook
5 won't miss 8 is going to give/
6 am going to wash is giving

6

- 2 has bought 6 is going to climb
3 is sitting 7 has come
4 is going to eat 8 is singing
5 is watching

7

- 2 between 6 in 10 through
3 at 7 across 11 in front of
4 by 8 on 12 on
5 on 9 at

8

- 2 C 4 A 6 A 8 A 10 C
3 A 5 B 7 B 9 B

9

- 1 I have lived here **for** ten years.
2 There isn't **anybody** in the garden.
3 **Are we going to** the party tonight?
4 I **always do** my homework in the evenings.
5 We bought some new **furniture** yesterday.
6 Simon has already **gone** to work.
7 You **will pass** your exams.
8 Philip hasn't got **much** free time today.
9 I **have just** finished my breakfast.
10 We **ate** chicken for dinner last night.
11 Tom **is usually** late for work.
12 There aren't **many** people in this office.

UNIT 16: Adjectives/Adverbs/Comparisons

1

- 2 dangerously 15 carefully
3 nicely 16 happily
4 easily 17 terribly
5 well 18 awfully
6 cheaply
7 safely
8 hard
9 comfortably
10 fast
11 beautifully
12 softly
13 early
14 noisily

2

- 3 adverb of time 11 adverb of manner
4 adverb of manner 12 adjective
5 adjective 13 adjective
6 adverb of place 14 adjective
7 adverb of frequency
8 adverb of manner
9 adverb of time
10 adverb of manner

3

- 1 delicious 3 happy
2 hot 4 nice

4

- | | |
|-------------|----------------|
| 2 heavily | 8 happily |
| 3 carefully | 9 soft |
| 4 angry | 10 beautifully |
| 5 quickly | 11 warm |
| 6 easy | 12 beautiful |
| 7 nice | |

5

- 2 f 3 e 4 a 5 d 6 b 7 g

6

- | | |
|--------------|-------------------|
| 1 good (adj) | 5 hard (adv) |
| 2 well (adv) | 6 fast/good (adj) |
| 3 fast (adv) | 7 good (adj) |
| 4 hard (adj) | 8 good (adj) |

7

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 2 She runs slowly. | 5 They work hard. |
| 3 They play cleverly. | 6 Fiona sings badly. |
| 4 He drives carefully. | 7 Paula dances beautifully. |

8

- | | |
|------------------|----------------|
| 2 bigger | biggest |
| 3 weaker | weakest |
| 4 more dangerous | most dangerous |
| 5 slower | slowest |
| 6 prettier | prettiest |
| 7 safer | safest |
| 8 more beautiful | most beautiful |
| 9 fatter | fattest |
| 10 sadder | saddest |

9

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 2 faster | fastest |
| 3 later | latest |
| 4 more clearly | most clearly |
| 5 more carelessly | most carelessly |
| 6 more generously | most generously |
| 7 harder | hardest |
| 8 earlier | earliest |

10

- 2 Yes, it's more expensive than mine.
- 3 Yes, she's younger than mine.
- 4 Yes, it's more exciting than mine.
- 5 Yes, it's longer than mine.
- 6 Yes, it's more interesting than mine.

11

- 2 They're the most expensive rings I've ever seen.
- 3 It's the smallest house I've ever seen.

12

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 2 harder than | 7 bigger, than |
| 3 colder than | 8 more expensive than |
| 4 older than | 9 more than |
| 5 less, than | 10 better, than |
| 6 more crowded than | |

13

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| 2 the most horrible | 6 the most beautiful |
| 3 the nicest | 7 the most interesting |
| 4 the coldest | 8 the worst |
| 5 the funniest | |

14

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------------------|
| 2 the best | 7 the tallest, in |
| 3 the tastiest | 8 loud |
| 4 clever | 9 expensive |
| 5 slower than | 10 the most intelligent, of |
| 6 more, than | |

15

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 2 more, than | 7 as old as |
| 3 as well as | 8 sharper than |
| 4 as strong as | 9 as good as |
| 5 as healthy as | 10 farther, than |
| 6 as fast as | |

16

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 2 the heaviest of | 6 smaller than |
| 3 heavier than | 7 longer than |
| 4 noisier than | 8 as friendly as |
| 5 faster than | |

17

- | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|
| 2 B | 4 B | 6 A | 8 A | 10 B |
| 3 C | 5 C | 7 A | 9 A | |

18

- 2 is as old as
- 3 the most interesting book
- 4 play tennis as well
- 5 the friendliest teacher/the most friendly teacher
- 6 as heavy as
- 7 have never had such
- 8 colder than

19

- 1 Chris is **cleverer/more clever** than Scott.
- 2 Jill is prettier **than** Sylvia.
- 3 Chocolate ice-cream is the **most** delicious of all.
- 4 She is a very **tall** woman.
- 5 The bus is **longer** than my car.
- 6 A Fiat isn't **as expensive as** a Porsche.

Oral Activity

(Suggested answer)

- SA: The Crown Hotel is bigger than the Pearl Hotel.
 SB: The Star Hotel is the smallest of all.

- SA: The Pearl Hotel has got more rooms than the Star Hotel.
 SB: The Crown Hotel is the most expensive of all.
 SA: The Pearl Hotel isn't as far from the city centre as the Star Hotel. etc.

Writing Activity

(Suggested answer)

... Crown Hotel. It is the biggest hotel of all. It has got more rooms than the others. It is the most expensive of all. It is not as far from the city centre as the other two hotels.

UNIT 17: Questions

1

- 3 Did you go out last night, too?
- 4 Can David drive, too?
- 5 Do you like pizza, too?
- 6 Has she got long hair, too?
- 7 Is Donna wearing a hat, too?

2

- | | | |
|---------|-------------|-------------|
| 2 Where | 6 What | 10 How long |
| 3 When | 7 How often | |
| 4 How | 8 What | |
| 5 Who | 9 Which | |

3

- | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|
| 2 Which | 7 Whose | 12 What |
| 3 What | 8 Who | 13 Why |
| 4 Where | 9 Where | 14 Who |
| 5 What | 10 When | |
| 6 Why | 11 Who | |

4

- | | |
|-------------|----------------|
| 2 How often | 5 How long |
| 3 How old | 6 How long ago |
| 4 How many | |

a 5 c 6 d 3 e 2 f 4

5

- | | |
|--------------------|---------|
| 2 How many | 5 Where |
| 3 What | 6 Why |
| 4 When / What time | 7 Who |

6

- 2 Did you enjoy the film?
- 3 How often do they play squash?
- 4 Did he call you yesterday?

7

- 5 Whose dress is it/this/that?
- 6 Were there many people at the party?
- 3 What fell on your head?
- 4 Who is talking on the phone?
- 5 Who has stolen her bag?
- 6 What is in the garden?
- 7 Who will bring the parcel?
- 8 Who sent Linda flowers?
- 9 What is making a funny noise?
- 10 Who bought his painting?

8

- 3 What will they buy?
- 4 Who is he meeting at 5 o'clock?
- 5 What is John writing?
- 6 Who did she see in the room?
- 7 What did he hear?
- 8 Who did he talk to?

9

- 3 Who has bought a new car?
- 4 What has Laura found?
- 5 Who will travel abroad next year?
- 6 Who did you see yesterday?
- 7 What are they repairing?
- 8 What did she have for lunch?
- 9 Who brought a present for the baby?
- 10 Who did you call last night?

10

- 2 What does she do?
She is a typist.
- 3 Where does she work?
She works in an office in the town centre.
- 4 What does Lily like to do in her spare time?
She likes to do sports.
- 5 Who is her best friend?
Sophie.
- 6 How long ago/When did they meet?
Two years ago.
- 7 Why are they friends?
Because they have the same hobbies.
- 8 How often do they go walking together?
Once a week.
- 9 Who drives them to the countryside?
Sophie.
- 10 What are Lily and Sophie doing at the moment?
They are having a rest.
- 11 Why is Sophie tired today?
Because she went to bed very late last night.

11

- 2 Where do you live?
- 3 Where were you born?
- 4 How old are you?
- 5 When did you start playing? / How old were you when you started playing?
- 6 What do you like doing in your spare time?
- 7 What are you doing now?
- 8 How long are you going to stay here (for)?

12

(Suggested answer)

- i) SA: What's your name?
SB: Roger Fox.
SA: Where do you live?
SB: I live in New York.
SA: Where were you born? etc.
- ii) SA: What is your name?
SB: Vanessa Reed.
SA: Where do you live?
SB: I live in London. etc.

13

- 2 Does he live here?
- 3 Which house is his?
- 4 Have you seen him today?
- 5 What time was it?
- 6 What did he do?
- 7 Have you ever spoken to him?

14

- | | | | |
|-----|-----|------|------|
| 2 C | 5 B | 8 B | 11 C |
| 3 A | 6 C | 9 A | 12 A |
| 4 A | 7 A | 10 B | |

15

- 2 What time are you going to the party?
- 3 How long has Maria been ill?
- 4 When are you leaving for Spain?
- 5 Why are you so tired today?
- 6 How many brothers have you got?
- 7 What is your best friend's name?

16

- 2 How often do you go to the gym?
- 3 When did you leave school?/How long ago did you leave school?
- 4 How much did you pay for that dress?
- 5 Whose bicycle is this?/Whose is this bicycle?

17

- | | | |
|-----|-----|------|
| 2 g | 5 h | 8 j |
| 3 b | 6 f | 9 i |
| 4 e | 7 a | 10 d |

18

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 2 won't you | 5 hasn't she |
| 3 has she | 6 aren't you |
| 4 didn't you | 7 are you |

a 3

b 5 d 7 e 6 f 2 g 4

19

- | | |
|------------|------------------|
| 2 will you | 6 have you |
| 3 aren't I | 7 aren't there |
| 4 is there | 8 will/won't you |
| 5 isn't it | |

20

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 2 are they ↙ | 7 are you ↙ |
| 3 aren't we ↙ | 8 hasn't he ↙ |
| 4 will he ↘ | 9 don't they ↘ |
| 5 can't she ↘ | 10 has he ↘ |
| 6 didn't they ↘ | |

21

- | | | |
|--------------|------------|------------|
| 2 doesn't it | 3 have you | 4 isn't it |
|--------------|------------|------------|

22

- | | |
|------------|---------------|
| 1 Which | 3 Who |
| 2 isn't it | 4 haven't you |

23

- 1 He has never travelled abroad, **has** he?
- 2 **Who told** you about Susan's wedding?
- 3 **Which** car is yours? The Fiat or the Opel?
- 4 How **much** money did you pay?
- 5 He has lunch at home every day, **doesn't** he?
- 6 Don't be late tonight, **will** you?
- 7 What time **are you** flying tomorrow?

Oral Activity

(Suggested answer)

- A**
- SA: Where did you study?
SB: In Paris.
 - SA: Which famous painter do you admire?
SB: Pablo Picasso.
 - SA: Have you ever met any famous painters?
SB: Yes, I have.
 - SA: What/Which is your favourite painting?
SB: The Miracle.
 - SA: How many paintings have you sold so far?
SB: A lot.
 - SA: Do you spend many hours painting every day?
SB: Not many.
 - SA: What are you working on these days?
SB: A portrait.
- B**
- SA: When did you start dancing?
SB: In 1990.
 - SA: Where did you learn to dance?
SB: In New York.

- SA: Which famous dancer do you admire?
SB: Rudolf Nureyev.
- SA: What/Which is your favourite ballet?
SB: Swan Lake.
- SA: Have you ever danced in London?
SB: Yes, I have.
- SA: What are you doing these days?
SB: I'm practising for a new ballet.

Writing Activity

(Suggested answer)

A famous actor

- When did you start acting?
- Where did you learn to act?
- Have you ever worked with other famous actors?
- Which famous actor do you admire?
- Have you starred in many films?
- What/Which is your favourite film?
- Do you spend many hours acting these days?
- What are you doing these days?

UNIT 18: Modal Verbs

1

- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 2 couldn't | 4 can't |
| 3 can't | 5 couldn't |

2

- He could dive, but now he can't.
- He could dance all night, but now he can't.
- He could eat a lot, but now he can't.
- He could walk for miles, but now he can't.
- He could lift heavy things, but now he can't.

3

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 2 asking permission | 5 ability in the past |
| 3 request | 6 ability |
| 4 ability | |

4

- | | | |
|---------|------------|------------|
| 2 can | 5 couldn't | 8 couldn't |
| 3 can't | 6 Can | 9 Can |
| 4 could | 7 couldn't | 10 Could |

5

(Ss' own answers.)

6

- | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|
| 2 May | 3 May | 4 Can |
|-------|-------|-------|

7

- May I use your phone/the phone in your office, please?
- Can I invite some friends to dinner, please?
- May I speak to you, please?
- Can we play in the garden, please?
- Can we go to Helen's party, please?

8

- | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 2 B | 4 B | 6 B | 8 A |
| 3 C | 5 C | 7 A | 9 B |

- 9** 2 mustn't 4 mustn't
3 mustn't 5 mustn't

- 10** 2 SA: Must we pay for it now?
SB: No, you needn't pay for it now.
3 SA: Must we stay here?
SB: No, you needn't stay here.
4 SA: Must we go to the gym?
SB: No, you needn't go to the gym.
5 SA: Must we buy her a present?
SB: No, you needn't buy her a present.
6 SA: Must we call him now?
SB: No, you needn't call him now.
7 SA: Must we finish the exercise now?
SB: No, you needn't finish the exercise now.

- 11** 2 needn't 4 must 6 mustn't
3 mustn't 5 needn't

- 12** 2 mustn't 4 mustn't
3 must 5 must

- 13** 2 mustn't 7 mustn't 12 mustn't
3 needn't 8 needn't 13 mustn't
4 mustn't 9 needn't 14 needn't
5 needn't 10 mustn't 15 needn't
6 mustn't 11 needn't

- 14** 2 must 4 needn't 6 needn't
3 Must 5 mustn't

- 15** 2 mustn't touch 6 needn't go
3 needn't finish 7 mustn't be
4 mustn't forget 8 needn't buy
5 must paint

- 16** (Suggested answers)
2 You mustn't throw stones.
3 You needn't get up early tomorrow.
4 You needn't help me with my project.
5 You must finish your homework (first).

- 17** 2 You must be quiet.
3 You mustn't eat or drink.
4 You must be careful with the books.
5 You mustn't leave books on the tables when you leave.
6 You must put the books back in the right place.

- 18** 2 Can 4 can 6 can't
3 mustn't 5 Can

- 19** 2 Will 4 Will 6 Will 8 Shall
3 Shall 5 Shall 7 Will

- 20**
- Shall I decorate the living room for you?
 - Shall I make the cake for you?
 - Shall I do the cooking for you?
 - Will you do the washing-up, please?
 - Will you help me move the sofa, please?
 - Will you put the CDs away, please?

- 21** 2 Will you close the window, please?
3 Shall I get you your glasses?
4 Shall I put some sugar in it?
5 Will you post some letters for me, please?

- 22** 1 Must 2 May 3 mustn't 4 Will

- 23** 1 I must **have** a bath.
2 You **can't go** out tonight.
3 **Will** you water the flowers this afternoon?
4 He must **study** hard for his exams.
5 She must **help** her mother today.
6 They **needn't stay** here any more.
7 I **couldn't** do puzzles when I was four years old.

Oral Activity

- 2 You must take a tent with you.
- 3 You must cook meals.
- 4 You mustn't throw litter on the ground.
- 5 You needn't take formal clothes with you.
- 6 You mustn't make any noise after 11 pm.

Writing Activity

(Suggested answer)

... must take a tent with you, You must cook your own meals. You mustn't throw litter on the ground and you mustn't make any noise after 11 pm. You needn't take formal clothes with you, but you must take warm clothes to wear. You needn't take your bed with you but you must take a sleeping bag.

UNIT 19: Infinitive/The “-ing form”/Too-Enough

1

- 2 She wants to be a vet.
- 3 He wants to be an actor.
- 4 He wants to be a sailor.
- 5 She wants to be a writer.
- 6 They want to be footballers.

2

- 2 Peggy went to the baker's to buy (some) bread.
- 3 Peggy went to the florist's to order (some) flowers.
- 4 Peggy went to the library to borrow some books.
- 5 Peggy went to the park to relax.
- 6 Peggy went to the swimming pool to swim.

3

- | | | |
|------------|------------|------------|
| 2 to marry | 5 wash | 8 to take |
| 3 do | 6 watch | 9 move |
| 4 to go | 7 to study | 10 to make |

4

- 2 No, it's too expensive./No, it isn't cheap enough.
- 3 No, it's too high./No, it isn't low enough.
- 4 No, it's too bitter./No, it isn't sweet enough.
- 5 No, it's too small./No, it isn't big enough.
- 6 No, it's too difficult./No, it isn't easy enough.

5

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 2 clean enough | 5 enough players |
| 3 strong enough | 6 fast enough |
| 4 enough milk | |

6

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 2 cold enough | 5 too small |
| 3 too old | 6 hot enough |
| 4 fit enough | |

7

- 2 They like going on picnics.
- 3 They like singing.
- 4 He likes cooking.
- 5 She likes reading.
- 6 She likes painting.

8

- | | | |
|-----------|------------|------------|
| 2 driving | 5 doing | 8 to buy |
| 3 to take | 6 to paint | 9 do |
| 4 travel | 7 eating | 10 cooking |

9

- | | | |
|------------|------------|-----------|
| 2 buy | 6 stay | 10 buying |
| 3 to post | 7 talking | 11 go |
| 4 come | 8 telling | 12 to do |
| 5 to visit | 9 shopping | |

10

- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 2 wearing | 8 cooking |
| 3 to watch | 9 to go |
| 4 to help | 10 to be |
| 5 take | 11 to play |
| 6 saying | 12 speak |
| 7 to buy | |

11

- | | |
|-----------|-------------|
| 2 going | 8 do |
| 3 to come | 9 to see |
| 4 going | 10 spending |
| 5 sitting | 11 make |
| 6 raining | 12 love |
| 7 put | |

12

- 3 You eat too much chocolate.
- 4 You drink too much Coke.
- 5 You don't do enough homework.
- 6 You don't drink enough milk.
- 7 You watch too many horror films.
- 8 You don't take enough exercise.
- 9 You spend too much money.
- 10 You read too many comics.

13

- | | |
|-----------|-------------|
| 2 to do | 9 to finish |
| 3 living | 10 to go |
| 4 mending | 11 to come |
| 5 to find | 12 reading |
| 6 to wash | 13 to open |
| 7 stay | 14 to go |
| 8 help | |

14

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 2 taking | 8 reading |
| 3 diving | 9 swimming |
| 4 racing | 10 cook |
| 5 fly | 11 to learn |
| 6 to become | 12 telling |
| 7 playing | |

15

- | | |
|----------------|------------------|
| 1 do, watching | 3 pay |
| 2 shouting | 4 to come, to go |

- 1 I would like **to go** to America next year.
- 2 He enjoys **dancing**.
- 3 "Why did you go to the library?" "**To borrow** a book."
- 4 I **must wash** my hair tonight.
- 5 Do you know how **to ski**?
- 6 She goes **running** every Thursday evening.
- 7 Have you got **enough** time to come shopping with me?
- 8 I'm too **short** to reach the top cupboard./I'm **not tall enough** to reach the top cupboard.
- 9 You are **too short** to touch the ceiling./You are **not tall** enough to touch the ceiling.
- 10 He will **leave** school when he's eighteen.

Oral Activity

(Suggested answers)

- i SA: What does Diana like doing?
SB: She likes meeting new people.
SA: What does Andrew dislike doing?
SB: He dislikes studying Maths.
SA: What does Diana dislike doing?
SB: She dislikes staying at home.
SA: What does Andrew want to be?
SB: He wants to be a captain.
SA: What does Diana want to be?
SB: She wants to be a businesswoman.
SA: What would Andrew like to have?
SB: Andrew would like to have his own ship.

SA: What would Diana like to have?

SB: She would like to have her own company.

SA: What does Andrew hope to do?

SB: Andrew hopes to sail to America.

SA: What does Diana hope to do?

SB: Diana hopes to be rich and successful.

(Suggested answers)

- ii SA: What do you dislike doing?
SB: I dislike eating vegetables.
SA: What do you want to be?
SB: I want to be a singer.
SA: What would you like to have?
SB: I would like to have a new bicycle.
SA: What do you hope to do?
SB: I hope to pass my exams.

Writing Activity

(Suggested answers)

..... studying Maths. He wants to be a captain. He would like to have his own ship. He hopes to sail to America one day.

..... staying at home. She wants to be a businesswoman. She would like to have her own company. She hopes to become rich and successful.

UNIT 20: Both / Neither - All / Done

1

- 3 Both of them are cups.
Neither of them is a vase/are vases.
- 4 All of them are kittens.
None of them is a puppy/are puppies.
- 5 All of them are medals.
None of them is a coin/are coins.
- 6 Both of them are lambs.
Neither of them is a goat/are goats.

2

- 3 No, none of them is a wild animal/are wild animals.
- 4 Yes, all of them are countries.
- 5 No, none of them is a farm animal/are farm animals.
- 6 No, neither of them is a sport/are sports.

3

- | | | |
|--------|--------|------------|
| 2 None | 5 all | 8 both |
| 3 all | 6 both | 9 All |
| 4 None | 7 all | 10 Neither |

4

- | | | |
|--------------|-----------|---------------|
| 2 All of | 5 none of | 8 none of |
| 3 neither of | 6 both | 9 both |
| 4 all | 7 both | 10 neither of |

5

- | | | |
|-----|-----|------|
| 2 A | 5 C | 8 A |
| 3 C | 6 A | 9 B |
| 4 C | 7 C | 10 C |

6

- 1 both 2 none 3 neither 4 all

7

- 1 I have got lots of friends. **None** of them has got blonde hair.
- 2 Steven has got two cars. **Both** of them are red.
- 3 My sister and I are short. **Neither** of us is tall.
- 4 There are twelve people in the room. **All** of them are girls.

- 5 Look at those babies! Neither of them **are** crying.
- 6 I have got two brothers. **Neither** of them are firemen.
- 7 Lucy has got two cats. **Neither** of them is black.
- 8 The three boys are happy. **None** of them is sad.

Oral Activity

- 2 SA: Do they like school?
SB: Yes, they both like school./Yes, both of them like school.
- 3 SA: Do they watch TV?
SB: Yes, they both watch TV./Yes, both of them watch TV.
- 4 SA: Do they play football?
SB: No, neither of them play(s) football.
- 5 SA: Have they got a pet?
SB: No, neither of them have/has got a pet.
- 6 SA: Have they got a guitar?
SB: Yes, they have both got a guitar./Yes, both of them have got a guitar.
- 7 SA: Do they like swimming?
SB: No, neither of them like(s) swimming.
- 8 SA: Have they got a bicycle?
SB: Yes, they have both got a bicycle./Yes, both of them have got a bicycle.
- 9 SA: Do they like vegetables?
SB: No, neither of them like(s) vegetables.

Writing Activity

(Suggested answer)

...They both like school and watching TV. Neither of them play(s) football or have (has) a pet. Both of them have got a guitar and a bicycle. Neither of them like(s) swimming or vegetables.

Revision 4 (Units 1-20)

1

- | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|
| 2 than | 5 of | 8 of |
| 3 in | 6 than | 9 than |
| 4 than | 7 in | 10 of |

2

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 2 the fastest of | 6 older than |
| 3 the cheapest of | 7 more comfortable than |
| 4 more expensive than | 8 more economical than |
| 5 the most expensive of | |

3

- | | | |
|-----------|---------------|-----------|
| 2 quickly | 5 good | 8 sad |
| 3 strong | 6 comfortable | 9 clever |
| 4 softly | 7 unhappy | 10 safely |

4

- | | |
|------------|---------|
| 2 How many | 7 How |
| 3 What | 8 Whose |
| 4 How much | 9 Which |
| 5 How long | 10 Why |
| 6 Who | |

5

- 2 Who has bought a present for Janet?
- 3 Whose jacket is this?/Whose is this jacket?
- 4 How long have you worked for this company?
- 5 How often do you go shopping?
- 6 Who will cook lunch on Sunday?
- 7 How much did Peter pay for his new car?
- 8 What did Susan buy yesterday?
- 9 Why is he happy?
- 10 When/What time will the party start?

6

- | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|
| 2 B | 4 C | 6 A | 8 A | 10 B |
| 3 B | 5 B | 7 A | 9 A | |

7

- | | | |
|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| 2 to learn | 7 talking | 12 to build |
| 3 to keep | 8 call | 13 to pass |
| 4 interrupt | 9 doing | 14 playing |
| 5 Drinking | 10 listening | 15 to buy |
| 6 eating | 11 waking up | |

8

- | | |
|--------------|-----------|
| 2 Both of | 5 none of |
| 3 none of | 6 both |
| 4 Neither of | 7 all |

9

- | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 2 have been | 9 are taking/are going to take |
| 3 like | 10 usually spend |
| 4 are staying | 11 is |
| 5 have already visited | 12 tried |
| 6 went | 13 didn't have |
| 7 had | 14 kept |
| 8 bought | 15 hope |

10

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 2 am staying | 8 is washing |
| 3 paints | 9 had |
| 4 has just planted | 10 wears |
| 5 am going to visit/am visiting | 11 will pass |
| 6 does it snow | 12 is falling down/ is going to fall down |
| 7 didn't phone | |

11

- | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 2 C | 4 B | 6 A | 8 C |
| 3 A | 5 C | 7 B | |

12

- 1 You must ~~x~~ try to be more patient.
- 2 She is ~~very~~ old enough to travel alone.
- 3 Susan hasn't ~~ever~~ been to Turkey before.
- 4 They enjoy playing ~~the~~ basketball.
- 5 Irene is ~~more~~ friendlier than Kate.